

Volume 1

# BEGINNER'S INTENSIVE LATIN

C. Eilers (2022)





est emensos insuperabilis expeditionibus partium animis, quae  
ocellae tempestates alias rebus infudere communibus per multa illa et dira faci  
testatis delatae procurrens asperitate nimia cuncta foedabat. Propinquitate eni  
tis, ut videbatur. Cuius acerbitati uxor grave accesserat incentivum, germanitate  
atrix saevientis adsidua, humani cruoris avida nihil mitius quam maritus; qui pau  
etos falsa et placentia sibi discentes, adfectati regni vel artium nefandarum calumn  
am Alexandrini nobilis mors repentina; cuius socrus cum misceri sibi generum, flagra  
onoratum tum comitem orientis formula missa letali omnino scelere nullo contactus  
centia crudelitati indulta per suspicionum nebulas aestimati quidam noxii damnabantur  
onlaticia victitabant, et civili iustoque imperio ad voluntatem converso cruentam, claud  
immina praescriptis legum committerentur, quod aliquotiens fecere principes saevi: sed q  
omines quidam ignoti, vilitate ipsa parum cavendi ad colligendos rumores per Antiochiae  
vites domus egentium habitu quicquid noscere poterant vel audire latenter intromissi per  
ero supprimerent Caesaris, quas invitis compluribus formido malorum independentium exprime  
aurem, velut Amphiarao referente aut Marcio, quondam vatibus inclitis, postridie disceret in  
ilia multa scrutanda, stimulos admovente regina, quae abrupte mariti fortunas trudebat in ex  
anorum actibus factitasse Maximini truculenti illius imperatoris rettulimus coniugem. Novo den  
o dicitur Gallienus, et adhibitis paucis clam ferro succinctis vesperi per tabernas palabatur et co  
urbe ubi pernoctantium luminum claritudo dierum solet imitari fulgorem. Postremo agnitus sae  
atur. Et haec quidem medullitus multis gementibus agebantur. Thalassius vero ea tempestate pra  
on maturitate vel consiliis mitigabat, ut aliquotiens celsae potestates iras principum molliverunt,  
eberrime docens, idque, incertum qua mente, ne lateret adfectans. Quibus mox Caesar acrius efferat  
pidi fluminis irrevocabili impetu ferebatur. Isaurorum incursiones. Nec sane haec sola perniciēs orient  
iscere, ex latrociniis occultis et raris, alente impunitate adulescentem in peius audaciam ad bella grav  
iactitabant, quod eorum capiti quidam consortes apud Iconium Pisidiae oppidum in amphitheatrali sp  
l eum locum ubi aliquando pastae sunt revertuntur, ita homines instar turbinis degressi montibus imp  
octes luna etiam tum cornuta ideoque nondum solido splendore fulgente nauticos observabant quos cu  
aphas eisdem sensim nihil opinantibus adsistebant et incendente aviditate saevitiam ne cedentium quide  
nt perpetrata. Cognitis enim pilatorum caesorumque funeribus nemo deinde ad has stationes appulit nav  
ontroversa. Procedente igitur mox tempore cum adventicium nihil inveniretur, relicta ora maritima in Ly  
m opibus pascabantur. Excitavit hic ardor milites per municipia plurima, quae isdem conterminant, dispo  
ersos multitudine superabatur ingenti, quae nata et educata inter editos recurvosque ambitus montium eo  
ens nostri pedites ad eos persequendos scandere clivos sublimes etiam si lapsantibus plantis fruticeta pre  
su valido gressus: hoste discursatore rupium abscisa volvente, ruinis ponderum inmanium consternuntur  
utela observatum est deinceps et cum edita montium petere coeperint grassatores, loci iniquitati milites c  
la, quae vehunt bina vel terna, pecudum ritu inertium trucidantur. Metuentes igitur idem latrones Lya  
amitibus deviis petivere Pamphyliam diu quidem intactam sed timore populationum et caedium, milite pe  
leritate nimia praevenirent, vigore corporum ac levitate confisi per flexuosas semitas ad summitates coll  
ni pro muro tuetur accolae circumfusus, augente nocte adulta terrorem quievire paulisper lucem opper  
bores pertulere gravissimos. Nam sole orto magnitudine angusti gurgitis s  
ant tunc apud Siden, isdem impetu occurrere veloci. Et signis prope ripa  
tis arborum truncis annem permeare latenter facillime trucidarunt. Unde  
ppidum Laranda. Ibi victu recreati et quiete, postquam abierat timor, vicos  
mne inventutis robur relictum in sedibus acciverunt. Et quoniam inedia g  
ous omne latus Isauriae defendentibus adsueti. Circumstetere igitur hoc m  
lum obsidionale commentum, maesti excedunt postrema vi subigente maiora viribus adgressuri. Proind  
chius montis Salaminis efferebantur, quae mox a trahatur. Certatim trepore locum ad bellum ad bellum  
leri eduxere procursu et agiliter praeterito Calycadni fluminis ponte, cuius undarum magnitudo murorum  
atur enim flagrans vesania manus et superior numero et ruitura sine respectu sa  
adios postea lentius incedebant. Quibus occurrere bene pertinax miles explicatis  
acriter consurgentem revocavere ductores rati intempestivum anceps subire certamen cum haut longe m  
ellatores obseratis undique portarum aditibus, propugnaculis insistebant et pinnis, congesta undique saxa  
men clausos vehementer angebat quod captis navigiis, quae frumenta vehebant per flumen, Isauri quiden  
itidibus dicitur. Haec videlicet facta sunt in Isauria, quae bellum Gallieno





# **BEGINNERS INTENSIVE LATIN**

Volume 1

Beginners Intensive Latin © 2022 by Claude Eilers is licensed under Attribution-NonCommercial-ShareAlike 4.0 International. To view a copy of this license, visit <http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-sa/4.0/>



ISBN: 978-1-988941-72-1

Printed in Canada.

First Printing of this edition, 2022; earlier editions, 2020, 2018, 2017, 2016

Radix Antiqua Publishing

Hamilton ON

This project is made possible with funding by the Government of Ontario and through eCampusOntario's support of the Virtual Learning Strategy. To learn more about the Virtual Learning Strategy visit: <https://vls.ecampusontario.ca>.

# Contents

|                                |    |
|--------------------------------|----|
| INTRODUCTION . . . . .         | 1  |
| Pronunciation                  |    |
| GRAMMATICAL OVERVIEW . . . . . | 7  |
| CHAPTER 1 . . . . .            | 11 |
| The Verb 'to go'               |    |
| Verbs of the Third Conjugation |    |
| The Imperative                 |    |
| CHAPTER 2 . . . . .            | 23 |
| Introduction to Case           |    |
| CHAPTER 2A. . . . .            | 31 |
| The Nominative and Accusative  |    |
| Fourth Conjugation             |    |
| Third Conjugation I-stem       |    |

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| CHAPTER 2B. . . . .                          | 41  |
| The Genitive Case                            |     |
| CHAPTER 3 . . . . .                          | 49  |
| Dative, Ablative, and Vocative               |     |
| Prepositions                                 |     |
| CHAPTER 4 . . . . .                          | 61  |
| The Verb 'to be' (esse)                      |     |
| The Verb 'to be able' (posse)                |     |
| CHAPTER 5 . . . . .                          | 71  |
| Nouns of the Third Declension                |     |
| CHAPTER 6 . . . . .                          | 79  |
| Adjectives of the 1st and 2nd Declension     |     |
| Substantive Use of the Adjective             |     |
| Ablative of Time                             |     |
| CHAPTER 7 . . . . .                          | 89  |
| Present Tense of the 1st and 2nd Conjugation |     |
| Future Tense of the 3rd and 4th Conjugation  |     |
| CHAPTER 8A . . . . .                         | 99  |
| The Imperfect Tense                          |     |
| The Future Tense                             |     |
| CHAPTER 8B . . . . .                         | 107 |
| Verbs that Take Infinitives                  |     |
| CHAPTER 9 . . . . .                          | 115 |
| Demonstratives                               |     |
| Adjectives with Genitives in -ius            |     |



|                                     |      |
|-------------------------------------|------|
| CHAPTER 10 . . . . .                | .127 |
| Personal Pronouns                   |      |
| nēmō                                |      |
| CHAPTER 11 . . . . .                | .137 |
| īdem, eadem, idem                   |      |
| The Pluperfect and Future Perfect   |      |
| CHAPTER 12 . . . . .                | .147 |
| Third-Declension Nouns with i-stems |      |
| Third-Declension Adjectives         |      |
| APPENDIX 2: PARADIGMS . . . . .     | .157 |
| VOCABULARY: ENGLISH—LATIN . . . . . | .173 |
| VOCABULARY: LATIN-ENGLISH . . . . . | .195 |



# Introduction



PRONUNCIATION

## Alphabet and Pronunciation

### The Alphabet

Latin uses the same alphabet that is found in English and many European languages. Indeed, it is often called the Roman Alphabet. The Romans, however, did not use the letters **j** or **w**, and the letters **k**, **y**, and **z** are relatively rare.

### Consonants

Consonants in Latin are roughly the same as in English with the following exceptions:

- bs** - is pronounced like **ps** in English “lapse” (**urbs** is pronounced *urps*)
- bt** - is pronounced like **pt** in English “opt” (**obtinere** is pronounced *optinere*)
- c** - is always pronounced hard as in “castle”, never soft as in “city” (**centum** is pronounced *kentum*)
- g** - is always hard as in “goat”, never soft as in “giant” (**gens** is pronounced *ghens*)
- i** - can either be a vowel or a consonant; when it is a consonant, it is pronounced like a ‘y’ (**iacio**)
- ph** - is like the English **p** in the word **uphill** (**philosophia**)
- r** - was rolled (**errare**)
- s** - is always sibilant as in English “kiss”, never **z** as in “his” or **sh** as in English “sugar”
- t** - is always hard as in **time**, never soft as in **nation** (**ratio** rhymes with *patio*)
- th** - is like the **th** in **pothole** (**theatrum**)
- v** - is pronounced like an English **w** in “wine” (**veritas** is pronounced *weritas*)

### Vowels

An important aspect of Latin pronunciation concerns vowel-length. Vowels in Latin can be either long or short, which affects both their sound and (more importantly) how long the sound would be held open. Here are the vowels, with some rough English equivalents (which, it should be noted, are only approximate).

#### Long

- ā** - like the second ‘a’ in English ‘aha!’ (**pāter**)
- ē** - like the English ‘they’ (**cēpit**)
- ī** - like the English ‘machine’ (**dōnī**)
- ō** - like the English ‘low’ (**Rōma**)
- ū** - like the English ‘true’ (**tū**)

#### Short

- ă** - like the first ‘a’ in English ‘aha!’ (**habet**)
- ĕ** - like the English ‘pet’ (**et**)
- ĭ** - like the English ‘pin’ (**nihil**)
- ŏ** - like the English ‘pot’ (**bonus**)
- ŭ** - like the English ‘put’ (**locus**)

Long vowels are held open roughly twice as long as a short vowel. In this text, long vowels are marked with macrons **ā**, **ē**, **ī**, **ō**, **ū**. (Short vowels will usually not be marked at all except for clarification.)

## Diphthongs

A diphthong is two vowel sounds that are pronounced as one syllable. In Latin there are six:

- ae** - like the ai in 'aisle' (**fāmae**)
- au** - like the **au** sound in 'sauerkraut' (**nauta**)
- ei** - like the ei in 'weight' (**eius**)
- eu** - about half way between the English 'ow' and 'ew' (**euge**)
- oe** - like the oi in 'oil' (**poena**)
- ui** - like the English 'we' (**huic**)

## Accentuation

In Latin, stress in multi-syllable words is never on the last syllable of the word. It is always either on the second-last (which is called the *penultimate*) or third-last (*ante-penultimate*) syllable. The rules are thus:

- ☞ the penultimate (second-last) syllable is stressed if it contains a long vowel or diphthong;
- ☞ if the penultimate is short, the third-last syllable (the antepenultimate) is stressed.

## Syllabification

A Latin word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs. (Latin has no silent letters.) Words are divided into syllable according to the following rules:

- ☞ consonants will go with the vowel that follows it:
  - ta-men**
  - i-ni-mi-cus**
- ☞ if a vowel is followed by two or more consonants, the first goes with the first vowel, the rest go with the following vowel:
  - for-tū-na**
  - pos-trē-mō**
- ☞ if there are two vowels (unless they are a diphthong), or a vowel and a diphthong, the syllables are divided there:
  - te-nu-ī**
  - vi-ae**

## Pronunciation practice

### Words

Read the following words aloud to yourself, keeping in mind the rules of Latin pronunciation and accent.

- |           |                |                |                 |               |
|-----------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. sē     | 9. ūnam        | 17. dīvīsa     | 25. aliam       | 33. māt̄rona  |
| 2. Gallī  | 10. et         | 18. Gallia     | 26. dīvidit     | 34. est       |
| 3. hī     | 11. omnēs      | 19. linguā     | 27. Gallōs      | 35. nostrā    |
| 4. omnium | 12. Belgae     | 20. institūtīs | 28. Belgīs      | 36. quārum    |
| 5. trēs   | 13. quī        | 21. tertiam    | 29. hōrum       | 37. ipsōrum   |
| 6. omnis  | 14. fortissimī | 22. incolunt   | 30. appellantur | 38. differunt |
| 7. ā      | 15. inter      | 23. Sēquana    | 31. flūmen      | 39. lēgibus   |
| 8. Celtae | 16. partēs     | 24. Aquītānīs  | 32. ab          |               |

### Reading

Read the following text, which comes from the opening of Caesar's *Gallic War*.

Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Māt̄rona et Sēquana dīvidit. hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae.

### Words

- |              |               |              |             |
|--------------|---------------|--------------|-------------|
| 40. aliae    | 48. saecla    | 56. rērum    | 64. trādunt |
| 41. mūtantur | 49. sīc       | 57. spatiō   |             |
| 42. et       | 50. minuuntur | 58. summa    |             |
| 43. vīvunt   | 51. inter     | 59. brevī    |             |
| 44. novātur  | 52. sē        | 60. augecunt |             |
| 45. cursōrēs | 53. gentēs    | 61. lampada  |             |
| 46. inque    | 54. semper    | 62. quasi    |             |
| 47. mortālēs | 55. et        | 63. mūtua    |             |

**Reading**

Read the following text aloud, which comes from the opening lines of Lucretius' *Nature of Things*, a long poem that explains Epicurean philosophy to a Roman audience.

sīc rērum summa novātur semper,  
 et inter sē mortālēs mūtua vīvunt.  
 augesunt aliae gentēs, aliae minuuntur,  
 inque brevī spatiō mūtantur saecula animantum  
 et quasi cursōrēs vītāi lampada trādunt.

**Words**

|               |                 |              |              |
|---------------|-----------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. omnīs      | 20. nātūra      | 39. servitiō | 58. opibus   |
| 2. hominēs    | 21. prōna       | 40. magis    | 59. glōriam  |
| 3. quī        | 22. atque       | 41. ūtimur;  | 60. quaerere |
| 4. sēsē       | 23. ventrī      | 42. alterum  | 61. et       |
| 5. student    | 24. oboedientia | 43. nōbīs    | 62. quoniam  |
| 6. praestāre  | 25. finxit      | 44. cum      | 63. vīta     |
| 7. ceterīs    | 26. sed         | 45. dīs      | 64. ipsa     |
| 8. animālibus | 27. nostra      | 46. alterum  | 65. quā      |
| 9. summā      | 28. omnis       | 47. cum      | 66. fruimur  |
| 10. ope       | 29. vis         | 48. beluīs   | 67. brevis   |
| 11. nitī      | 30. in          | 49. commūne  | 68. est      |
| 12. decet     | 31. animō       | 50. est      | 69. memoriam |
| 13. nē        | 32. et          | 51. quō      | 70. nostrī   |
| 14. vītam     | 33. corpore     | 52. mihi     | 71. quam     |
| 15. silentiō  | 34. sita        | 53. rectius  | 72. maxume   |
| 16. transeant | 35. est         | 54. vidētur  | 73. longam   |
| 17. veluti    | 36. animī       | 55. ingeni   | 74. efficere |
| 18. pecora    | 37. imperiō     | 56. quam     |              |
| 19. quae      | 38. corporis    | 57. vīrium   |              |

## Reading 2

Read the following text, which comes from the opening lines of Sallust' *Conspiracy of Catiline*, which relates a political crisis that occurred in 63 BC.

omnīs hominēs, quī sēsē student praestāre ceterīs animālibus, summā ope nitī decet, nē vītā silentiō transeant veluti pecora, quae nātūra prōna atque ventrī oboedientia finxit. sed nostra omnis vis in animō et corpore sita est: animī imperiō, corporis servitiō magis ūtimur; alterum nōbis cum dīs, alterum cum beluīs commūne est. quō mihi rectius vidētur ingenī quam vīrium opibus glōriam quaerere et, quoniam vīta ipsa, quā fruimur, brevis est, memoriam nostrī quam maxime longam efficere.



# Some Grammatical Terms in English

---

English words all belong to one of eight *parts of speech*:

- ↪ a **noun**, which designates a person, place, or thing (for example, *boy, bottle, Toronto*)
- ↪ a **pronoun**, which is used in place of a noun (for example, *he, she, it, they, them*)
- ↪ an **adjective**, which describes a noun (for example, *short, tall, blue*)
- ↪ a **verb**, which expresses an action or a state of being (for example, *run, walk, eat, drink, is, are*)
- ↪ an **adverb**, which modifies a noun, adjective, or other adverb (for example, *slowly, quickly, happily*)
- ↪ a **conjunction**, which connects sentences, clauses, phrases, or words together (for example, *and, but, or, since, although*)
- ↪ an **interjection**, which is a word or sound that expresses an emotion (for example, *wow, ouch, eh*)
- ↪ a **preposition**, which is placed before a noun or pronoun to express direction, position, time, or other abstract relation (for example, *by, with, from, to, for, in, at*)

## Nouns and pronouns

English nouns and pronouns have the qualities of **gender**, **number**, and **case**.

There are three genders: **masculine**, **feminine**, and **neuter**. English nouns are feminine if they refer to a person or animal that is female (*woman, girl, hen, cow*). They are masculine if they refer to a male (*man, boy, stallion, bull*); English nouns that refer to “things” are neuter (*book, table, guitar, war, peace*). (Sometimes in English, objects can be personified as feminine.)

In English, there are two **numbers**: singular and plural. Most English nouns form their plurals by adding the letter *-s* to the singular form (*book, books; idea, ideas*). Some words, however, have a vowel change (*woman, women; mouse, mice*).

English has three **cases**: the subjective case, the possessive case, and the objective case. These survive in our pronouns. The **subjective** case is used for the subject of the verb: *I, he, she, we*. The **possessive** case designates possession: *my, his, our, Mary's*. The **objective** case is used to show the object of a verb or preposition: *me, him, us*.

## Verbs

Verbs have *person, number, tense, voice, and mood*.

**Person** identifies the relation between the speaker of a sentence and other participants. First person is “I” (singular) or “we”; second person, “you” (singular or plural); third person is “he”, “she”, “it”, or “they”.

**Number** is *singular or plural*.

**Tense** identifies the time and aspect of a verb's action. The time is future, present, or past. The aspect refers to whether action is *progressive (or continuous), completed, or simple*.

**Voice** indicates whether the subject of the verb is performing the action of the verb or is being acted upon. In the sentence “Robert sees Susan”, the verb is *active*; in “Susan is seen by Robert”, it is *passive*.

**Mood** expresses how a verb is conceived. English and Latin have three moods: *imperative*, *indicative*, and *subjunctive*. If a verb is meant as a command, it is in the *imperative* mood; if its action is stated as a fact, it is in the *indicative* mood; if it is meant as a possibility, then it will be in the *subjunctive* mood.

### **Adjectives and Adverbs**

---

**Adjectives** are words that modify nouns. When an adjective is used as a noun (e.g., “Blessed are *the poor*”), it is called the *substantive* use of the adjective. (“Substantive” is another word for noun.)

**Adverbs** are words that modify verbs, adjectives (including numbers), clauses, sentences, and other adverbs.

### **Sentences, Clauses, and Phrases**

---

A **sentence** is a group of words that contains a subject (noun or pronoun) and a predicate (verb) and in itself expresses a complete thought.

A **clause** is a group of words that has a **subject** and a **predicate**. (that is, a verb). An **independent clause** expresses a complete thought and can stand alone as a sentence. **Subordinate clauses** only express part of a complete idea and require the rest of the sentence to complete it.

A **phrase** is a group of words that works together as a unit but does not include a **subject** and **predicate**.



# 1

---

THE VERB 'TO GO'

VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION

THE IMPERATIVE

## Vocabulary to learn

### verbs

---

**agō, agēre, ēgī, āctum** — to do, act; drive; lead  
**dīcō, dīcēre, dīxī, dīctum** — to say; speak  
**discō, discēre, didicī** — to learn  
**dūcō, dūcēre, dūxī, ductum** — to lead  
**eō, īre, īvī (or ī), itum** — to go  
**legō, legēre, lēgī, lēctum** — to read; choose, gather  
**regō, régēre, rēxī, rēctum** — to rule, direct  
**scribō, scribēre, scripsī, scriptum** — to write  
**vincō, vincēre, vīcī, victum** — to conquer, defeat  
**vīvō, vīvēre, vīxī, vīctum** — to live, be alive  
**nōlī, nōlīte** — don't...

### some interrogatives

---

**quid?** — what? why?  
**quis?** — who?  
**quō** — where? to where?  
**-ne** — (added to the first word of a sentence to make a question)

### pronouns and nouns

---

**domum** (with a verb of motion) — (to) home; homewards  
**mē** — me  
**nōs** — us  
**tē** — you (sg.)  
**Rōmam** (with a verb of motion) — to Rome  
**Rōmānī** — the Romans

### other

---

**dum** — while  
**et** — and  
**necesse est** — it is necessary (+ infinitive)  
**nihil** — nothing  
**nōn** — not  
**sed** — but  
**semper** — always  
**bene** — well, satisfactorily

## Verbs

The verb (from Latin **verbum**, “word”) is usually the most important word in a sentence, and once you have correctly understood a verb, you are well on your way towards understanding what its sentence means. Latin verbs *conjugate*, which means that they change form depending on how they are being used in a sentence. In this way, a specific verb form can provide a lot of information about what is going on, including:

- ↪ whether the subject of the sentence is a 1st person “I”, a 2nd person “you”, or a 3rd person “he, she, it, they” (this is called *person*);
- ↪ whether the subject of the sentence is singular or plural (that is, the subject’s *number*);
- ↪ whether the action of the sentence took place in the past, present, or future (that is, its *tense*).

Consider the verb “to go” (**īre**) in the present tense:

| <b>īre</b>  | “to go”                                  | <i>infinitive</i>          |
|-------------|--|----------------------------|
| <b>eō</b>   | “I go” or “I am going”                   | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>īs</b>   | “you go” or “you are going”              | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>it</b>   | “he/she/it goes” or “he/she/it is going” | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>īmus</b> | “we go” or “we are going”                | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>ītis</b> | “you (plural) go” or “you are going”     | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>eunt</b> | “they go” or “they are going”            | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |
| <b>ī</b>    | “go!” (singular)                         | <i>singular imperative</i> |
| <b>īte</b>  | “go!” (plural)                           | <i>plural imperative</i>   |

Because Latin is so highly inflected, with specific forms designating specific meanings, it is able to communicate with a single word what English needs several to say. Thus Latin only needs one word, **eō**, to say what we need two or three words to communicate in English, “I go” or “I am going”. That is, the subject of Latin verbs are often implied and included within the form of the verb itself:

- ↪ **īmus** means “we go” without any explicit mention of “we”;
- ↪ **eunt** means “they go” without having to say “they” explicitly;
- ↪ **it** can mean “he goes”, “she goes”, or “it goes” depending on context.

### Put it into practice

For practice, translate the following short sentences.

- |                                    |  |
|------------------------------------|--|
| 1. Gaius Rōmam it.                 | 4. Mārcus Rōmam nōn it.                    |
| 2. Mārcus et Semprōnia domum eunt. | 5. Sempronia is not going to Rome.         |
| 3. Semprōnius semper it.           | 6. Marcus and Gaius are always going home. |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Verbs of the 3rd conjugation

Latin verbs fall into several groups or families called conjugations, which were identified and given numbers already in ancient times. Almost half of the verbs in the Latin language belong to the *Third Conjugation*, so we are going to learn it first.

Here is the paradigm of the verb “to conquer” (*vincere*) in the present tense, which you need to memorize thoroughly.

| <b>vincere</b>  | “to conquer”                                      | <i>infinitive</i>          |
|-----------------|---|----------------------------|
| <b>vincō</b>    | “I conquer” or “I am conquering”                  | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>vincis</b>   | “you conquer” or “you are conquering”             | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>vincit</b>   | “he/she/it conquers” or “he/she/it is conquering” | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>vincimus</b> | “we conquer” or “we are conquering”               | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>vincitis</b> | “you conquer” or “you are conquering”             | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>vincunt</b>  | “they conquer” or “they are conquering”           | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |

The endings, you will notice, are the same as those of the verb “to go” (*ire*). Again, the subjects of these verbs can be left unspecified: the idea can be communicated by the verb form.

## Implied subjects in English and Latin

When the subject of a sentence is contained in a verb, it is called an *implied subject*. Having an implied subject is common in Latin; it is rarer in English, but not completely unknown. Consider an argument between two children with alternating:

“Am, too!” “Are not!”

“Am, too!” “Are not!”

In this exchange, there is no ambiguity in meaning because English “am” is only used in the first person and “are” is used only in the second person. Thus the subject is implied.

Because Latin is so highly inflected, it can use implied with all its verbs:

- ⇒ **eō** means “I am going” or “I go”, without any need to use a specific word for “I”;
- ⇒ **nōn eunt** means “they are not going” or “they do not go” without using “they”.

### Put it into practice

Translate the following, noting the implied subjects.

- |                          |                                     |
|--------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 7. quō it?               | 11. tē Rōmam dūcimus.               |
| 8. bene vīvimus.         | 12. What are you (sg.) doing?       |
| 9. scribit, dum legimus. | 13. We are doing nothing.           |
| 10. semper discitis.     | 14. Where are you (pl.) leading me? |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.



## The Perfect Tense

The *perfect tense* in Latin is the tense of completed action: that is, it states that some action is finished and over. It can be translated in two ways in English:

- ☞ the English simple past (“I saw”, “I did”, “I wrote”);
- ☞ the English perfect tense (“I have seen”, “I have done”, “I have written”).

Here is **vincere** in the perfect tense, which again you need to memorize:

|                 |  |                            |
|-----------------|--|----------------------------|
| <b>vīcī</b>     | “I conquered” or “I have conquered”                | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>vīcistī</b>  | “you conquered” or “you have conquered”            | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>vīcit</b>    | “he/she/it conquered” or “he/she/it has conquered” | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>vīcimus</b>  | “we conquered” or “we have conquered”              | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>vīcistis</b> | “you conquered” or “you have conquered”            | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>vīcērunt</b> | “they conquered” or “they have conquered”          | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |

The verb ‘to go’ in the perfect tense has the same endings, though the stem is slightly variable:

|                          |  |                            |
|--------------------------|--|----------------------------|
| <b>īvī or iī</b>         | “I went” or “I have gone”                | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>īvistī or īstī</b>    | “you went” or “you have gone”            | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>īvit or iit</b>       | “he/she/it went” or “he/she/it has gone” | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>īvimus or iimus</b>   | “we went” or “we have gone”              | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>īvistis or īstis</b>  | “you went” or “you have gone”            | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>īvērunt or iērunt</b> | “they went” or “they have gone”          | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |

Pay special attention to the endings, which are added to the perfect stem (which we will discuss shortly). Also note that some, but not all, of the endings are similar to the present endings.

### Put it into practice

- |                   |                             |
|-------------------|-----------------------------|
| 15. nihil ēgi.    | 18. quid scripsisti?        |
| 16. nōs vīcērunt. | 19. Where did you (pl.) go? |
| 17. domum īvit.   | 20. What did you (sg.) say? |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Parsing

You will often be asked to parse Latin verbs. This means to describe it grammatically by explaining its inflection. This will involve identifying its:

- ☞ person
- ☞ number
- ☞ tense
- ☞ mood
- ☞ voice

Here are some examples of parsed verbs. (For now, all the verb forms that you will be asked to parse will be indicative and active.)

- ☞ **vīcistī** — 2nd person, singular, perfect, indicative, active (“you conquered”)
- ☞ **vīncis** — 2nd person, singular, present, indicative, active (“you are conquering”)
- ☞ **agīt** — 3rd person, singular, present, indicative, active (“he/she/it does”)
- ☞ **ēgīt** — 3rd person, singular, perfect, indicative, active (“he did”)

#### Put it into practice

Parse the following verbs.

- |             |              |            |
|-------------|--------------|------------|
| 21. ēgistis | 23. vīcērunt | 25. discit |
| 22. agunt   | 24. dūxit    | 26. vīncis |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## The Present Infinitive

The forms of the verbs listed above that change depending on their person, number and tense are called *finite* verbs because they are limited (Lat. **fīnis** -- “limit”) by person and number. There is a form of the verb that does not take person and number called the infinitive: that is, not limited by person and number.

In English, the infinitive takes the form “to \_\_\_\_\_”. Thus,

- ☞ the infinitive of the verb “see” is “to see”;
- ☞ the infinitive of the verb “read” is “to read”;
- ☞ etc.

In Latin, the infinitive has a special form, ending in the letters -re:

- ☞ the infinitive of the verb “to go” is **īre**;
- ☞ the infinitive of the verb “to conquer” is **vīncere**.

The other verbs in this lesson are:

- ☞ **agere** — “to do/act” or “to lead”;
- ☞ **dūcere** — “to lead”;
- ☞ **vīvere** — “to live, to be alive”.

#### Put it into practice

Give the infinitives for the following verb forms.

- |          |             |              |
|----------|-------------|--------------|
| 27. eunt | 29. vīcit   | 31. discimus |
| 28. agis | 30. dūxisti | 32. vīncis   |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Principal Parts

All forms of any given verb can be derived from four principal parts:

- ☞ the present indicative;
- ☞ the infinitive;
- ☞ the perfect indicative;
- ☞ the perfect passive participle.

Because they contain the stems on which all other forms depend, these must be memorized for every verb in your vocabulary. The verbs in this lesson:

|                               |                                |                              |  |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------|--|
| <b>eō</b><br>“I go”           | <b>īre</b><br>“to go”          | <b>īvī/īi</b><br>“I went”    | <b>itum</b><br>“(having been) gone”        |
| <b>agō</b><br>“I do”          | <b>agere</b><br>“to do”        | <b>ēgī</b><br>“I did”        | <b>āctum</b><br>“(having been) done”       |
| <b>dīcō</b><br>“I say”        | <b>dīcere</b><br>“to say”      | <b>dīxī</b><br>“I said”      | <b>dictum</b><br>“(having been) said”      |
| <b>discō</b><br>“I learn”     | <b>discere</b><br>“to learn”   | <b>didicī</b><br>“I learned” |  |
| <b>ducō</b><br>“I lead”       | <b>ducere</b><br>“to lead”     | <b>duxī</b><br>“I led”       | <b>ductum</b><br>“(having been) led”       |
| <b>legō</b><br>“I am reading” | <b>legere</b><br>“to read”     | <b>lēgī</b><br>“I read”      | <b>lēctum</b><br>“(having been) read”      |
| <b>regō</b><br>“I rule”       | <b>regere</b><br>“to rule”     | <b>rēxī</b><br>“I ruled”     | <b>rēctum</b><br>“(having been) ruled”     |
| <b>scribō</b><br>“I write”    | <b>scribere</b><br>“to write”  | <b>scripsī</b><br>“I wrote”  | <b>scriptum</b><br>“(having been) written” |
| <b>vincō</b><br>“I conquer”   | <b>vincere</b><br>“to conquer” | <b>vīcī</b><br>“I conquered” | <b>victum</b><br>“(having been) conquered” |
| <b>vīvō</b><br>“I live”       | <b>vivere</b><br>“to live”     | <b>vīxī</b><br>“I lived”     | <b>vīctum</b><br>“(having been) lived”     |

You need to memorize the principal parts of all your verbs now!

## The Imperative

The *imperative* is the form of the verb that Latin uses to give orders. Here there are only two forms: 2nd person singular and 2nd person plural.

Imperatives are formed by taking the present infinitive and dropping the *-ere* and using the imperative ending, which is *-e*. The plural imperative adds “*-ite*” to this stem. (Note the irregular imperative, **duc**.)

|                                |   |  |
|--------------------------------|---|--|
| <b>ire</b><br>“to go”          | <b>i!</b><br>“go!” (singular)                 | <b>ite!</b><br>“go!” (plural)          |
| <b>agere</b><br>“to do”        | <b>age!</b><br>“do!” (singular)               | <b>agite!</b><br>“do!” (plural)        |
| <b>discere</b><br>“to learn”   | <b>disce!</b><br>“learn!” (singular)          | <b>discite!</b><br>“learn!” (plural)   |
| <b>dūcere</b><br>“to lead”     | <b>dūc!</b> (irregular)<br>“lead!” (singular) | <b>dūcite!</b><br>“lead!” (plural)     |
| <b>vincere</b><br>“to conquer” | <b>vince!</b><br>“conquer!” (singular)        | <b>vincite!</b><br>“conquer!” (plural) |
| <b>vīvere</b><br>“to live”     | <b>vīve!</b><br>“live!” (singular)            | <b>vīvite!</b><br>“live!” (plural)     |

Negative imperatives are created by adding the Latin word **nōlī, nōlīte** (“don’t”) to the infinitive:

- ⇒ **i!** — “go!” (said to one person)
- ⇒ **nōlī ire!** — “don’t go!” (said to one person)
- ⇒ **nōlīte ire!** — “don’t go!” (said to two or more people)
- ⇒ **nōlī legere!** — “don’t read!” (said to one person)
- ⇒ **nōlīte scribere!** — “don’t write!” (said to two or more people)

## Practice Sentences

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. quid Rōmānī lēgērunt?
2. Rōmānī nihil lēgērunt.
3. quid scrīpsimus?
4. nihil scrīpsimus.
5. Mārcus dīxit: “nihil agō.”
6. Rōmānī nōs nōn vīcērunt.
7. Caesar nōs dūxit.
8. quid discis?
9. nihil discō.
10. nōlī mē vincere!
11. bene dīcere didicī.
12. nihil dīcite!
13. nōlīte dīcere!
14. quid scrīpsisti?
15. nihil scrīpsī.
16. quō Mārcus it?
17. Mārcus Rōmam it.
18. quō Mārcus et Fannia eunt?
19. Rōmam Mārcus it; Fannia nōn Rōmam it, sed domum it.

**A brief dialogue**

---

Mārcus dixit: “quid agitis?”

Semprōnia et Fannia dixerunt: “nihil agimus.”

Mārcus dixit: “quō itis?”

Semprōnia dīxit: “domum eō, sed Fannia Rōmam it.”

Mārcus: “itne Fannia Rōmam?”

Semprōnia: “it!”

Mārcus: “Semprōnia, nōlī domum ire!”

*(later that same day)*

Publius: “quō Fannia et Semprōnia iērunt?”

Mārcus: “Fannia Rōmam iit et Semprōnia domum iit.”

*(later that same day)*

Quintus: “quis Rōmam iit?”

Mārcus: “Fannia Rōmam iit.”

Quintus: “quis domum iit?”

Mārcus: “Semprōnia domum iit.”

**Translate into Latin**

---

1. Where are they going?
2. They are going home.
3. What are you saying?
4. I said nothing.
5. He is learning nothing.
6. While he reads, he learns.
7. Don't speak!

## Ancient Readings

1. Dūcimus.  
*Motto of The Royal Canadian Infantry*
2. vīxit, dum vīxit, bene.  
*Terence, Hecyra 461*
3. dum vīvimus, discimus.  
*Ancient proverb*
4. Sōcratēs dīxit: sī nihil discis, dēdiscis.  
**sī** — “if”  
**dēdiscō, -ere, dēdidicī** — “unlearn, forget”  
*Ps.-Caecilius Balbus, De Nugis Philosophorum 3.6*
5. disce aut discēde!  
**aut** — “or”  
**discēdō, discēdere, discessī, discussum** — “leave; withdraw”  
*Motto of King’s School, Rochester UK*
6. antequam dīcis, disce!  
**antequam** — “before”  
*Vulgate, Ecclesiasticus 18:19*
7. nihil discit quī cito discit.  
**quī** — “who”  
**cito** — “quickly”  
*Anton Bernolak, Grammatica Slavica 299*
8. nōlī mē tangere!  
**tangō, tangere, tetigī, tactum** — “to touch”  
*Vulgate, John 20:17*
9. nōlī timēre.  
**timeō, timēre, timuī** — “to fear”  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 12.10*
10. age quod agis!  
**quod** — “that which, what”  
*Thomas à Kempis, De Imitatione Christi 3.47.2*

11. semper meum negōtium agō.  
**meum negotium** — “my own business”  
*Seneca, Apocolocyntosis 10*
12. nātūra nihil agit frustrā.  
**nātūra** — “nature”  
**frustrā** — “in vain; without purpose”  
*Isaac Newton, Regulae Philosophandi*
13. ī domum et suspende tē!  
**suspendere tē** — “to hang yourself”  
*Plautus, Poenulus 309*
14. quī scribit, bis legit.  
**bis** — “twice”  
*Ancient proverb*
15. in aquā scribis.  
**in aquā** — “in water”  
*Erasmus, Adages 1.4.56*
16. quod scripsī, scripsī.  
**quod** — “that which, what”  
*Vulgate, John 19:22*
17. hodiē quid ēgisti?  
**hodiē** — “today”  
*Plinius Minor, Epistulae 1.9.2*

### Legal Maxim #1

scribere est agere

**est** — “is”

*Legal principle by which treasonable words set down in writing are considered the equivalent to overt acts of treason.*





# 2

---

## INTRODUCTION TO CASE

## Vocabulary to learn

### verbs

---

mittō, mittĕre, mīsi, missum — to send

tangō, tangĕre, tetigi, tactum — to touch

### nouns

---

digitus, digiti, m. — a finger

dōnum, dōni, n. — a gift

epistula, epistulae, f. — an epistle; a letter

fābula, fābulae, f. — a story

stilus, stili, m. — a pen

verbum, verbī, n. — a word (plural: verba — words)

## Case in English

Consider the following short sentences:

- ☞ **He** sees.
- ☞ **She** sees.
- ☞ **She** sees **him**.
- ☞ **He** sees **her**.
- ☞ **She** sees **his** cat.
- ☞ **He** sees **her** cat.

Now consider this question: what **function** does each of these **bolded** words play in each of the sentences? Take a minute to think about this before reading the answer below.

The answer: **he** and **she** are the doers of the action expressed by the verb (here, “sees”). What about **him** and **her**? They are the receivers of the action expressed by the verb (here, they are seen). In grammatical terms we say:

- ☞ **he** and **she** are the *subjects* of the verb;
- ☞ **him** and **her** are *objects* of the verb;
- ☞ **his** and **her** indicate *possession*.

Note that *subject*, *object*, and *possession* are terms that describe the **function** of each word in the sentence. Also note that these words change their form according to what their function is in the sentence.

**Case** is the word we use to describe the form (the particular spelling) of a noun (or pronoun) that indicates its function in a sentence. So, in English

- ☞ **he** and **she** are in the *subject case*.
- ☞ **him** and **her** are in the *object case*.
- ☞ **his** and **her** are in the *possessive case*.

These are the only three cases that exist in English. The subject and object cases normally only appear in distinctively different forms in the pronouns, but the possessive case is distinguished by a special form both in the pronouns (his, her, its) and in nouns (Fred’s, Sally’s, the dog’s).

## Cases in Latin

Latin has six cases:

- ☞ nominative: the subject case (**Mārcus** id legit = “*Marcus* reads it”)
- ☞ genitive: the possessive case (**Quintus** epistulam **Mārci** legit = “*Quintus* reads the letter *of Marcus*”)
- ☞ dative: the indirect object case (**Quintus** epistulam **Mārcō** mittit = “*Quintus* sends the letter *to Marcus*”)
- ☞ accusative: the object case (**Quintus** **Mārcum** ibi mittit = “*Quintus* sends *Marcus* there”)
- ☞ ablative: many functions, including instrument (**Quintus** **digitō** id tangit = “*Quintus* touches it *with a finger*”)
- ☞ vocative: the case of address (Mārce = “hey *Marcus!*”)

## Gender

All Latin nouns have gender, which is either masculine, feminine or neuter. This gender is grammatical, not factual, which means that it often does not matter whether the actual object described by the noun is male, female, or neither. You need to memorise this, too, because it affects the forms of words and because you will need it in order to use adjectives correctly.

## Declensions

Latin words have a distinctive form for each case. You will need to *memorize* these forms. Fortunately you don't have to do this with every noun you learn. The forms of Latin nouns follow five distinctive patterns. These patterns are called *declensions* and are numbered accordingly. If you know what declension a noun belongs to, you will then know what distinctive forms are used to indicate the cases.

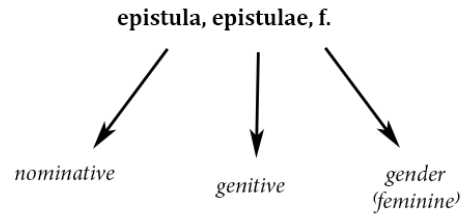
| <b>Singular</b>   | <b>First</b>            | <b>Second</b>   |               | <b>Third</b>  | <b>Fourth</b>  | <b>Fifth</b> |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|--------------|
|                   | <i>'letter/epistle'</i> | <i>'finger'</i> | <i>'gift'</i> | <i>'king'</i> | <i>'fruit'</i> | <i>'day'</i> |
| <i>Nominative</i> | epistula                | digitus         | dōnum         | rēx           | fructus        | diēs         |
| <i>Genitive</i>   | epistulae               | digitī          | dōnī          | rēgis         | fructūs        | diēi         |
| <i>Dative</i>     | epistulae               | digitō          | dōnō          | rēgi          | fructuī        | diēi         |
| <i>Accusative</i> | epistulam               | digitum         | dōnum         | rēgem         | fructum        | diem         |
| <i>Ablative</i>   | epistolā                | digitō          | dōnō          | rēge          | fructū         | diē          |
| <i>Vocative</i>   | epistula                | digite          | dōnum         | rēx           | fructus        | diēs         |
| <b>Plural</b>     |                         |                 |               |               |                |              |
| <i>Nominative</i> | epistulae               | digitī          | dōna          | rēgēs         | fructūs        | diēs         |
| <i>Genitive</i>   | epistolārum             | digitōrum       | dōnōrum       | rēgum         | fructuum       | diērum       |
| <i>Dative</i>     | epistulis               | digitis         | dōnis         | rēgibus       | fructibus      | diēbus       |
| <i>Accusative</i> | epistolās               | digitōs         | dōna          | rēgēs         | fructūs        | diēs         |
| <i>Ablative</i>   | epistulis               | digitis         | dōnis         | rēgibus       | fructibus      | diēbus       |
| <i>Vocative</i>   | epistulae               | digitī          | dōna          | rēgēs         | fructus        | diēs         |

You will soon be learning all these forms: nouns of the first and second declensions are learned in Chapters 2 and 3, the third declension in Chapter 5, and the fourth and fifth declension in Chapter 18.

### The 'dictionary form' of the noun

How can tell what declension a noun belongs to? The important form here is that of the *genitive case*. If you know the genitive, you'll know the declension according to which its forms are governed. The genitive is also important because from it you can find the *stem*. Dropping these endings from the genitive form also gives you the *stem* that forms the basis for all other forms of the noun.

This is why when you learn a noun, you learn both its nominative and genitive forms. (The dictionary form of a noun gives its nominative singular, genitive singular, and gender). You will be required to reproduce nouns in this form.



**Dictionary Form of the Noun**

Just like in English, Latin nouns and pronouns come in singular and plural forms. You have to memorize these forms too.

## Practice

1. In your own words, describe what case is. Illustrate with the verbs you know and the names Marcus, Quintus, and Julia.

### Practice with *legere*

2. Quintus epistulam legit. \_\_\_\_\_
3. Quintus et Julia epistulam legunt. \_\_\_\_\_
4. Quintus Juliae epistulam legit. \_\_\_\_\_
5. Quinti epistulam Julia legit. \_\_\_\_\_
6. Marcus reads the letter. \_\_\_\_\_
7. Marcus reads Quintus' letter. \_\_\_\_\_
8. Marcus and Julia read Quintus' letter. \_\_\_\_\_
9. Marcus reads Julia's letter. \_\_\_\_\_

**Practice: *mittere***

10. Mārcus epistulam mittit. \_\_\_\_\_
11. Mārcus Quintō dōnum mittit. \_\_\_\_\_
12. Mārcus et Quintus epistulam Juliae mittunt. \_\_\_\_\_
13. Mārcus Quintī epistulam Juliae mittit. \_\_\_\_\_
14. Mārcus epistulam Juliae et Quintō mittit. \_\_\_\_\_
15. Quintus is sending a letter to Marcus. \_\_\_\_\_
16. Quintus is sending Marcus' letter. \_\_\_\_\_

**Practice with *scrībere***

17. Quintus epistulam scrībit. \_\_\_\_\_
18. Quintus et Julia verba scrībunt. \_\_\_\_\_
19. Quintus Mārcō epistulam scribit. \_\_\_\_\_
20. Quintō epistulam Julia scrībit. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Quintus stilō epistulam scrībit. \_\_\_\_\_
22. Julia writes a letter to Quintus. \_\_\_\_\_
23. Marcus writes Julia's letter. \_\_\_\_\_

24. Marcus and Julia read Quintus' letter. \_\_\_\_\_

25. Marcus is writing a letter with the pen. \_\_\_\_\_

**Practice with *tangere***

26. Mārcus id tangit. \_\_\_\_\_

27. Mārcus Quintum tangit. \_\_\_\_\_

28. Mārcus Quintum digitō tangit. \_\_\_\_\_

29. Mārcus Quintī digitum tangit. \_\_\_\_\_

30. Mārcus et Julia Quintum tangunt. \_\_\_\_\_

31. Mārcus Juliam et Quintum tangit. \_\_\_\_\_

32. Mārcus touches Julia. \_\_\_\_\_

33. Julia touches Marcus. \_\_\_\_\_

34. Marcus and Quintus touch Julia. \_\_\_\_\_

35. Marcus touches Quintus and Julia. \_\_\_\_\_

36. Marcus touches Quintus with (his) finger. \_\_\_\_\_





# 2A

---

THE NOMINATIVE AND ACCUSATIVE

FOURTH CONJUGATION

THIRD CONJUGATION I-STEM

## Vocabulary to learn

### verbs

---

**audiō, audire, audivī, auditum** — to hear, listen to  
**bibō, bibere, bibī** — to drink  
**capiō, capere, cēpī, captum** — to take; catch, capture, seize; get  
**faciō, facere, fēcī, factum** — to make, build; do, accomplish  
**fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum** — to flee, escape; avoid, shun  
**interficiō, interficere, interfēcī, interfectum** — to kill  
**veniō, venire, vēnī, ventum** — to come  
**est** — he is or she is or it is  
**sunt** — they are

### nouns

---

**aqua, aquae, f.** — water  
**factum, factī, n.** — deed, act, accomplishment; fact  
**fēmina, fēminae, f.** — woman  
**īra, īrae, f.** — anger; rage; ire  
**liber, librī, m.** — book  
**nauta, nautae, m.** — sailor  
**oculus, oculī, m.** — eye  
**perīculum, perīculī, n.** — danger, risk  
**poēta, poētae, m.** — poet  
**populus, populī, m.** — a people, a nation  
**puella, puellae, f.** — girl  
**puer, puerī, m.** — boy  
**sapientia, sapientiae, f.** — wisdom, discernment  
**sententia, sententiae, f.** — opinion, judgement; idea; a sentence  
**vīnum, vīnī, n.** — wine  
**vir, virī, m.** — man, husband  
**vīta, vītae, f.** — life; way of life

### other

---

**is** — he (subject)  
**eum** — him (object)  
**ea** — she (subject)  
**eam** — her (object)  
**id** — it

## Nouns

In the last chapter, we saw that Latin verbs inflect by conjugating. Latin nouns and pronouns also have inflection: that is, they change form depending on their role in the sentence. The inflection of verbs is called *conjugation* (verbs *conjugate*); the inflection of nouns is called *declension* (nouns *decline*).

A noun (from Latin **nomen**) is a word used to name a person, animal, place, thing, or abstract idea. In Latin, nouns inflect according to *number*, *gender*, and *case*:

- ↪ *number* can be *singular* or *plural*;
- ↪ *gender* can be *masculine*, *feminine*, or *neuter*;
- ↪ Latin has six *cases*; in this lesson we will be considering the *nominative* and the *accusative*.

### Gender of Latin Nouns

In English, nouns are mostly genderless with certain clear exceptions, such nouns that refer to gendered people or animals (“man”, “boy”, “woman”; “bull”, “cow”; etc.).

All Latin nouns and adjectives, by contrast, have one of three *genders*: **masculine**, **feminine**, or **neuter**.

The relationship between a noun and its gender is sometimes fairly obvious — the word for “man” (**vir**) is masculine and the word for “woman” (**fēmina**) is feminine. At other times there are discernible conventions: in Latin, the months and rivers are all masculine; countries, cities, islands, and trees tend to be feminine. Many objects that English speakers regard as things (and therefore neuter in our language) in Latin can be masculine or feminine or neuter. Because of this, genders need to be memorized, which is why they are given with each noun entry.

### The Definite and indefinite article

In English, we have a definite article (“the”) and indefinite article (“a”). Latin had neither, and a Latin noun like **vīta** can be translated as either “a life” or “the life”, depending on context.

## Case

### Subjective, objective, and possessive cases in the English pronoun

All Latin nouns change their form according to their role in their sentences: that is, they decline. How does this work? Consider the English pronouns “he” and “him”. These are different forms of the same word, but which one you use depends on what the word is doing in the sentence:

- ↪ “he sees you” — the word “he” is in the English subjective case;
- ↪ “you see him” — the word “him” is in the objective case;
- ↪ “it was his” — the word “his” is in the possessive case.

How do people know when to use “he” and when to use “him”. Native speakers do it by instinct — “him loves you” just sounds wrong. But there is also a logic behind the rules — when a pronoun is

performing the action of the verb, the subject-case is used (“he”); when the action of the verb is done to it, it becomes the object (“him”); when a pronoun is the possessor, it is “his”. The English pronoun “she” is similar: “she” is for the subject, “her” for the object, “hers” for the possessive. So, too, with “I”, “me” and “my”.

English pronouns have three cases — subject, object, and possessive. Latin has six cases, three of which are used much like these English cases:

- ☞ the subjective case is the equivalent of the Latin *nominative case*;
- ☞ the possessive case is roughly the same as the Latin *genitive case* (introduced in Chapter 2B);
- ☞ the object case is used like the Latin *accusative*.

### The nominative and accusative cases in the Latin personal pronoun

Here are a few Latin pronouns:

- is** — “he” (subject)
- eum** — “him” (object)
- ea** — “she” (subject)
- eam** — “her” (object)
- id** — “it”

These work much like English pronouns do, with the form of the pronoun changing depending on what it is doing in a sentence.

- ☞ **is eam fugit** — he flees her
- ☞ **ea eum capit** — she captures him

#### Put it into practice

Translate the following.

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. is eam ducit   | 4. eum ea regit   |
| 2. ea eum vincit  | 5. he touches him |
| 3. ea id scripsit | 6. she hears her  |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

In these sentences, **is** and **ea** are the subjects of their respective verbs, while **eum** and **eam** are the objects. In Latin, the subject of a sentence is provided by the nominative case and the object by the accusative case.

### The Nominative Case

In the drawing below, Pollux points to his eyebrow, eye, nose, and beard:

- ☞ hoc supercilium est = “this is an eyebrow”
- ☞ hic nāsus est = “this is a nose”
- ☞ haec est barba = “this is a beard”



## The Accusative Case

Compare the drawing above (where Pollux uses the nominative to name the parts of this face) to the following drawing where Pollux touches these parts, which are now in the accusative case because they are the object of each verb. Because the case is different, **nāsus** changes to **nāsūm**; **barba**, to **barbam**. (The nominative and accusative of **supercilium** have the same ending.)



### Put it into practice

In groups of two and three, begin a dialogue based on the parts of your face. Point to a part of your face and say one of the following:

7. **hic est oculus. quid tangō?**
8. **hic nāsus est. quid tangō?**
9. **haec est barba. quid tangō?**
10. **hoc supercilium est. quid tangō?**

The answer will be **tangis oculum** (etc). Repeat until you have cycled through all possibilities. Continue, if you have time, with the words **capillus** (“hair”), **digitus** (“finger”), **collum** (“neck”), **lingua** (“tongue”), **palma** (“palm”). Return to this exercise with plurals, once you’ve learned them.

### The nominative and accusative cases compared

As in English, the person or thing that performs the action of a verb is the grammatical subject of that verb. In Latin, these are put in the nominative case. The person or thing that the verb acts upon is the grammatical object, which in Latin is put in the accusative case.

The endings of nouns change according to their case. Consider the Latin names Flāvīa and Iūlia:

- ☞ Flāvīa Iūliam ducit — Flavia leads Julia
- ☞ Flāviam Iūlia ducit — Julia leads Flavia

English uses word order to show who is leading whom. Latin uses case endings, and word order is not fixed. The same thing happens if we look at the names Marcus and Quintus:

- ☞ Mārcus Quintum fugit — Marcus flees Quintus
- ☞ Mārcum Quintus fugit — Quintus flees Marcus
- ☞ Flāviam et Mārcum Iūlia et Quintus fugiunt — Julia and Quintus flee Flavia and Marcus
- ☞ Flāvīa et Mārcus Iūliam et Quintum fugiunt — Flavia and Marcus flee Julia and Quintus

Note that the word order does not establish the meaning of the sentence: this is because the role that a word plays in its sentence is determined by its case-ending, not its position in the sentence.

The case of a noun can be seen in its ending:

- ☞ a second declension noun like the name Mārcus in the accusative is Mārcum;
- ☞ a first declension noun like Flāvīa becomes Flāviam.

#### Put it into practice

Translate the following short sentences.

- |                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 11. fēmina vinum bibit.   | 14. verba scrīpsī.           |
| 12. puerum Quintus capit. | 15. We are reading the book. |
| 13. puer Quintum cēpit.   | 16. Do you hear the poet?    |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

The singular forms of the accusative case in the first and second declensions can be summarized as follows:

|            | 1st decl.      | 2nd decl.     | 2nd. decl. neuter |
|------------|----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| nominative | <b>fēmina</b>  | <b>ocūlus</b> | <b>verbum</b>     |
| accusative | <b>fēminam</b> | <b>ocūlum</b> | <b>verbum</b>     |

The plurals are:

|            | 1st decl.      | 2nd decl.     | 2nd. decl. neuter |
|------------|----------------|---------------|-------------------|
| nominative | <b>fēminae</b> | <b>ocūlī</b>  | <b>verba</b>      |
| accusative | <b>fēminās</b> | <b>ocūlōs</b> | <b>verba</b>      |

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following short sentences.

- |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 17. fēminae verba dixerunt.   | 20. poēta librum scripsit.     |
| 18. vir puerōs dūxit.         | 21. poētae librōs scripsērunt. |
| 19. puellās fēminae dūxērunt. | 22. virī vitās agunt.          |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**Third Conjugation Verbs with i-stems**

In this chapter's vocabulary are a handful of verbs belonging to the third conjugation, as you can see from their infinitives, which end in *-ĕre*. Three of these new verbs, however, belong to a sub-category of the third conjugation called "*third conjugation i-stem verbs*" because *-iō* appears in the first person singular present form.

|                |                       |
|----------------|-----------------------|
| <b>capiō</b>   | "I capture"           |
| <b>capis</b>   | "you capture"         |
| <b>capit</b>   | "he/she/it captures"  |
| <b>capimus</b> | "we capture"          |
| <b>capitis</b> | "you (pl.) capture"   |
| <b>capiunt</b> | "they capture"        |
| <hr/>          |                       |
| <b>cape</b>    | "capture!" (singular) |
| <b>capite</b>  | "capture!" (plural)   |

The stem is **capī-**, which affects the first person singular and third person plural endings, which become *-io* and *-iunt*, respectively.

**Fourth Conjugation Verbs**

In this chapter's vocabulary are also two verbs of the *fourth conjugation*, which have infinitives in *-īre*.

|                |                    |
|----------------|--------------------|
| <b>audiō</b>   | "I hear"           |
| <b>audis</b>   | "you hear"         |
| <b>audit</b>   | "he/she/it hears"  |
| <b>audimus</b> | "we hear"          |
| <b>auditis</b> | "you (pl.) hear"   |
| <b>audiunt</b> | "they hear"        |
| <hr/>          |                    |
| <b>audī</b>    | "hear!" (singular) |
| <b>audīte</b>  | "hear!" (plural)   |

The forms are the same as the third conjugation i-stems, except for the imperative, which ends in *-ī*. (You already know one fourth conjugation verb — *eō, ire, īvī (or ii), itum* ("to go"), which you learned in Chapter 1).

## Practice Sentences

Translate the following sentences. In each, identify the subject and object.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. nōli mē fugēre!                             | 14. quō mē dūcis?                          |
| 2. vītam bene vīve!                            | 15. puerīne virōs fugiunt?                 |
| 3. puellae eum cēpērunt.                       | 16. mē audīte!                             |
| 4. Caesar Rōmam iit.                           | 17. poētae Rōmam vērērunt.                 |
| 5. nōli aquam bibēre!                          | 18. nautam poeta nōn interfēcit.           |
| 6. verba nōn diximus, sed facta fēcimus.       | 19. Don't speak! (sg.)                     |
| 7. virī perīcula fūgērunt.                     | 20. They are reading and writing opinions. |
| 8. aquam bibimus, sed vīnum bibitis.           | 21. Are you (pl.) going home?              |
| 9. nōlite sentiāas scribēre!                   | 22. He conquered us.                       |
| 10. fēminās et virōs cēpistis.                 | 23. Where are you going?                   |
| 11. sentiāas legimus sed sapientiam scribimus. | 24. I fled the dangers.                    |
| 12. sapientia mē dūcit, sed ira eum dūcit.     | 25. Don't (pl.) read the words.            |
| 13. nōlite domum ire!                          |  |

## Ancient Readings

- caecus caecum dūcit.  
*caecus* — “a blind man”  
*Vulgate, Luke 6:39 (adapted)*
- vīnum incendit iram.  
*incendit* — “inflames”  
*Seneca, De Ira 2.19.5*
- librōs lege!  
*Dionysius Cato, Monosticha 16*
- facta, nōn verba.  
*Motto of the Dint Hill Technical High School (Jamaica)*
- vīvite et bibite!  
*Bernardes, Nova Floresta 1.44*



6. fugit hōra.  
**hora, -ae, f.** — “the hour”  
*Ancient proverb*
7. quod cupis, capis.  
**quod** — “that which; what”  
**cupis** — “you desire”  
*Grynaeus 599*
8. sum, ergō bibō; bibō, ergō sum.  
**ergō** — “therefore”  
**sum** — “I am”  
*Fumagalli, L’Ape Latina 2652*
9. vīnum verba ministrat.  
**ministrat** — “he/she/it helps”  
*G. v. Gaal, Sprüchwörter, no. 1690*

### Legal Maxim #2

**lĕx nihil frustrā facit.**

**lĕx** — “the law”

**frustrā** — “in vain”

*Maxim invoking the legal principle that the law will not attempt to accomplish something that would be pointless.*

### Legal maxim #3

**consensus facit nuptiās.**

**consensus** — “consent”

**nuptiae, nuptiārum, f. pl.** — “wedding, marriage”

*Legal principle recognizing that mutual consent is a prerequisite of a legal marriage.*



2B



THE GENITIVE CASE

## Vocabulary to learn

### nouns

- ager, agrī, m.** — field; land, property  
**amīcus, -ī, m.** — friend (masculine)  
**amīca, -ae, f.** — friend (feminine), girlfriend  
**fāma, fāmae, f.** — rumour, report; fame; reputation  
**iūstitia, -ae, f.** — justice  
**locus, -ī, m.** — place  
**lupus, -ī, m.** — wolf  
**nātūra, nātūrae, f.** — nature  
**numerus, -ī, m.** — number  
**signum, signī, n.** — sign, signal  
**stultitia, -ae, f.** — foolishness

### verbs and other

- intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum** — to understand  
**cuius...?** — whose? or of what?  
**eius** — his/her/its (possessive)

## The Genitive Case

The genitive case allows one noun to qualify another. It fulfills a number of different functions, most of which have an analogue in the English preposition **of**. The endings:

- ☞ **filius tyrannī** = “the son of a tyrant” or “the tyrant’s son”
- ☞ **oculi fēminae** = “the eyes of the woman” or “the woman’s eyes”
- ☞ **numerus virōrum** = “a number of men”

The genitive case is always included as part of the dictionary form of a noun, and must be memorized as part of the word. The reason is that the nominative form by itself is insufficient to identify what declension the noun belongs to and therefore what its other forms are. The genitive of each declension is unique. Nouns of the first declension end in **-ae**; nouns of the second declension end in **-ī**.

### Put it into practice

Translate the following short sentences.

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. fēmina vīnum Quintī bibit.    | 4. verba Quintī lēgērunt.               |
| 2. filium fēminae Quintus capit. | 5. They are reading the poet’s book.    |
| 3. filius fēminae Quintum cēpit. | 6. Do you (pl.) hear the woman’s words? |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

The plural forms are **-ōrum** for the second declension nouns (including neuters) and **-ārum** for first declension nouns.

### Put it into practice

Translate the following short sentences.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 7. dōna virōrum cēpi.                      | 10. librōs poetārum lēgērunt.             |
| 8. Quintus natūram periculōrum intellēxit. | 11. Caesar conquered a number of nations. |
| 9. numerum sentiārum audīvimus.            | 12. Do you (pl.) hear the women’s words?  |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## The 1st and 2nd declensions

All Latin nouns change (or inflect) according to case and number, and the patterns are consistent enough that they are presented in paradigms like the ones following below. Each group of these nouns is called a declension, and there are five declensions in Latin.

Here is a paradigm of nouns of the first declension. (Cases that you don’t need to learn until the next lesson are greyed out.) These forms must be learned diligently — without knowing your cases, you will not be able to understand even a single Latin sentence.

| <i>singular</i> |                |                        | <i>plural</i>    |                      |  |
|-----------------|----------------|------------------------|------------------|----------------------|--|
| <i>nom.</i>     | <b>fēmina</b>  | “a woman”              | <b>fēminae</b>   | “women”              |  |
| <i>gen.</i>     | <b>fēminae</b> | “of a woman”           | <b>fēminārum</b> | “of women”           |  |
| <i>dat.</i>     | fēminae        | “to/for a woman”       | fēminīs          | “to/for women”       |  |
| <i>acc.</i>     | <b>fēminam</b> | “a woman” (object)     | <b>fēminās</b>   | “women” (object)     |  |
| <i>abl.</i>     | fēminā         | “by/with/from a woman” | fēminīs          | “by/with/from women” |  |
| <i>voc.</i>     | fēmina         | “o woman!”             | fēminae          | “o women!”           |  |

Here is a paradigm of masculine nouns of the second declension. (Cases that you don't need to learn until the next lesson are greyed out.)

| <i>singular</i> |               |                       | <i>plural</i>   |                     |  |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------|---------------------|--|
| <i>nom.</i>     | <b>oculus</b> | “an eye”              | <b>oculī</b>    | “eyes”              |  |
| <i>gen.</i>     | <b>oculī</b>  | “of an eye”           | <b>oculōrum</b> | “of eyes”           |  |
| <i>dat.</i>     | oculō         | “to/for an eye”       | oculīs          | “to/for eyes”       |  |
| <i>acc.</i>     | <b>oculum</b> | “an eye” (object)     | <b>oculōs</b>   | “eyes” (object)     |  |
| <i>abl.</i>     | oculō         | “by/with/from an eye” | oculīs          | “by/with/from eyes” |  |
| <i>voc.</i>     | ocule         | “o eye!”              | oculi           | “o eyes!”           |  |

An important sub-group of these have nominatives that end in -r. (Note that the key difference here is the nominative singular form. The genitive and accusative case endings are exactly the same.)

| <i>singular</i> |              |                      | <i>plural</i>  |                    |  |
|-----------------|--------------|----------------------|----------------|--------------------|--|
| <i>nom.</i>     | <b>vir</b>   | “a man”              | <b>virī</b>    | “men”              |  |
| <i>gen.</i>     | <b>virī</b>  | “of a man”           | <b>virōrum</b> | “of men”           |  |
| <i>dat.</i>     | virō         | “to/for a man”       | virīs          | “to/for men”       |  |
| <i>acc.</i>     | <b>virum</b> | “a man” (object)     | <b>virōs</b>   | “men” (object)     |  |
| <i>abl.</i>     | virō         | “by/with/from a man” | virīs          | “by/with/from men” |  |
| <i>voc.</i>     | vir          | “o man!”             | virī           | “o men!”           |  |

Neuter nouns of the second declension are similar, but have identical forms for the nominative and accusative:

| <i>singular</i> |               |                       | <i>plural</i>   |                      |  |
|-----------------|---------------|-----------------------|-----------------|----------------------|--|
| <i>nom.</i>     | <b>verbum</b> | ‘a word’              | <b>verba</b>    | ‘words’              |  |
| <i>gen.</i>     | <b>verbī</b>  | ‘of a word’           | <b>verbōrum</b> | ‘of words’           |  |
| <i>dat.</i>     | verbō         | ‘to/for a word’       | verbīs          | ‘to/for words’       |  |
| <i>acc.</i>     | <b>verbum</b> | ‘a word’ (object)     | <b>verba</b>    | ‘words’ (object)     |  |
| <i>abl.</i>     | verbō         | ‘by/with/from a word’ | verbīs          | ‘by/with/from words’ |  |
| <i>voc.</i>     | verbum        | ‘o word!’             | verba           | ‘o words!’           |  |

Nominatives and accusatives here work exactly as with pronouns: accusatives mark the grammatical objects of sentences and nominatives, the subjects. Consider this sentence:

☞ **fēminae vīnum bibunt, sed virī cervesiam.** — “Women drink wine, but men (drink) beer.”

Here, **fēminae** and **virī** are both nominative and the grammatical subjects of the verb; **vīnum** and **cervesiam** are accusatives and the grammatical objects of the verb.

### The Dictionary form of a noun

When you look up a word in the vocabulary at the back of this book (or in a dictionary), nouns are typically presented like they are in the vocabulary above: nominative, genitive, and gender. For example:

**populus, populī, m.** — a people, a nation

The genitive form shows that this noun belongs to the second declension, and thereby what its other forms will be. (By itself, the ending **-us** of the nominative here could be second, third, or fourth declension.)

### Practice

Translate the following phrases into English.

- |                      |                     |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. nātūra irae       | 9. facta nautae     |
| 2. numerus amīcōrum  | 10. perīcula vītae  |
| 3. sapientia fēminae | 11. nātūra vīnī     |
| 4. librī fēminārum   | 12. perīculum vīnī  |
| 5. agrī virōrum      | 13. perīcula irae   |
| 6. nātūra vītae      | 14. ira puerōrum    |
| 7. ager fēminae      | 15. fāma poētae     |
| 8. nātūra perīculī   | 16. signum perīculī |

Translate the following phrases into Latin

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 17. the women’s lives    | 21. the boy’s water     |
| 18. the boy’s opinion    | 22. the men’s words     |
| 19. the sailors’ friends | 23. a friend’s opinions |
| 20. the girl’s deed      | 24. a number of gifts   |

## Practice Sentences

Translate the following sentences. In each, identify the subject and object.

1. verba poētārum audivimus.
2. nōlī sentiētias nautārum audire!
3. puerīne iram virōrum fugiunt?
4. librōs poētārum legite!
5. nōlī verba irae dicere!
6. puella oculōs fēminae tetigit.
7. verba sapientiae audite!
8. aquam populī bibimus.
9. virī verba sapientiae scribunt, puerī legunt.
10. natūram periculī intellēximus et id fūgimus.
11. Don't speak (pl.) words of anger!
12. We drank the man's wine.
13. They are reading the poet's opinions.
14. He fled the danger.
15. Don't (pl.) read the words.
16. Do you (sg.) understand the nature of wisdom?



## Ancient Readings

1. labor famae pater est.  
**labor** — “work, labor”  
**pater** — “father”  
*Ancient Proverb*
2. maximum remedium irae mora est.  
**maximum remedium** — “the greatest remedy”  
**mora, morae, f.** — “delay”  
*Seneca, De Ira 2.29.1*
3. dōna natūrae prō populō sunt.  
**prō populō** — “for the people”  
*Motto of Ontario Hydro*
4. silentium est signum sapientiae, et loquācitas est signum stultitiae.  
**silentium, -iī, n.** — (sounds like?)  
**loquācitas** — “talkativeness” (nominative)  
**stultitia, -ae, f.** — “foolishness”  
*Petrus Alphonsus, Disciplina Clericalis, De Silentio*
5. sapientia vītae meditatio est.  
**meditatio** — “contemplation” (nominative)  
*Spinoza, Ethica 4.67*
6. nātūra nōs amīcōs fēcit.  
**nōs** — “us”  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 95.53*
7. stultōrum infinitus est numerus.  
**stultus, -i, m.** — “a fool”  
**infinitus** — “infinite, unlimited”  
*Vulgata, Ecclesiastes 1.15*
8. vītam regit fortūna, nōn sapientia.  
**fortūna** — “luck”  
*Ancient proverb*
9. quandō bibō vīnum, dīcō Latīnum; quandō cervisiam, dīcō stultitiam.  
**quandō** — “when”  
**cervisia** — “beer”  
**stultitia, -ae, f.** — “foolishness”  
*Abraham a Sancta Clara, Sämtliche Werke 381*

10. ignōrantia iūris nōn excusat; ignōrantia factōrum excusat.

**ignōrantia, -ae, f.** — “ignorance”

**iūris** — “of the law” (genitive)

**excusat** — “excuse”

*Legal maxim*

11. medicina est soror philosophiae.

**soror** — “sister”

**medicina, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)

**philosophia, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)

*Tertulian, De Anima 2*

12. stultitia soror est malitiae.

**soror** — “sister”

**stultitia, -ae, f.** — “foolishness”

**malitia, -ae, f.** — “malice”

*Sophocles (Tosi 407)*

13. repetitio est māter memoriae.

**māter** — “mother”

**repetitio** — “repetition” (nominative)

**memoria, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)

*Ancient proverb*

14. oboedientia est essentia legis.

**oboedientia, -ae, f.** — “obedience”

**essentia, -ae, f.** — “essence”

*Juristic maxim*

#### Legal maxim #4

doli incapax

**incapax** — “incapable”

**dolus, dolī, m.** — “fraud, deceit, crime”

*Legal phrase describing people (such as children) who are incapable of criminal intent and therefore cannot be held criminally responsible.*

#### Legal maxim #5a

amicus cūriae

**cūria, curiae, f.** — “court”

*A bystander (usually a lawyer) who is not a party to a proceeding but who comes before the court to offer assistance or advice on some point of law.*

# 3

---

## DATIVE, ABLATIVE, AND VOCATIVE PREPOSITIONS

## Vocabulary to learn

### verbs

---

**trādō, trādēre, trādidi, trāditum** — to hand over, surrender; deliver, transmit; report

**pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum** — to put, place, set

### nouns

---

**arma, -ōrum, n. pl.** — (only in plural) arms; weapons

**caelum, -ī, n.** — sky; heaven

**dea, -ae, f.** — goddess; female deity  
(irregular dative/ablative plural: **deābus**)

**deus, -ī, m.** — a god, deity; God  
(dative/ablative plural is sometimes **dis**;  
nominative plural is sometimes **dī**)

**equus, equī, m.** — horse

**fīlia, -ae, f.** — daughter  
(note the irregular dative/ablative plural:  
**filiābus**)

**fīlius, -ī, m.** — son (note the irregular vocative  
singular: **fili**)

**fortūna, -ae, f.** — luck, fortune

**grātia, -ae, f.** — favour; gratitude; partiality

**grātiās agere** — (+ dative) to thank (someone)

**patria, -ae, f.** — homeland; fatherland

**pecūnia, -ae, f.** — money

**porta, -ae, f.** — gate; entrance

**Rōma, -ae, f.** — Rome

**rosa, -ae, f.** — a rose

**templum, -ī, n.** — temple, shrine

**terra, -ae, f.** — earth, soil; land; country, region

**tyrannus, -ī, m.** — tyrant

**victōria, -ae, f.** — victory

### prepositions and other

---

**ad** — (prep. + accusative) to, towards, up to; against

**cum** — (prep. + ablative) with

**mēcum** — with me

**tēcum** — with you (sg.)

**nōbiscum** — with us

**vōbiscum** — with you (pl.)

**dē** — (prep. + ablative) about; from, down from

**ex or ē** — (prep. + ablative) out, out of; from

**in** — (prep. + ablative) in; on; among

**in** — (prep. + accusative) into; up to; against

**numquam** — never

**propter** — (prep. + accusative) on account of; because of

**sine** — (prep. + ablative) without

## The Dative Case

The dative case identifies the indirect recipient of an action and is usually translated with the English prepositions **to** or **for**. In the second declension, dative nouns end in **-ō** in the singular and **-īs** in the plural. In the first declension, they are in **-ae** in the singular and **-īs** in the plural. (Note that the genitive and dative singular of the first declension have the same ending and that the plural datives are the same for first and second declension.)

### Put it into practice

Give the dative form for the following nominatives (if it is singular, give the singular; if it is plural, plural):

- |             |               |             |
|-------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. tyrannus | 6. filii      | 11. nautae  |
| 2. filia    | 7. dōna       | 12. rosae   |
| 3. filius   | 8. vīna       | 13. populus |
| 4. facta    | 9. sententiae | 14. ager    |
| 5. puellae  | 10. puer      | 15. fēmina  |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

The dative is especially common with verbs of giving, showing, telling, or entrusting, which take an accusative of the direct object and a dative of the indirect object. It is usually translated with the English prepositions **to** or **for**.

Here are some examples:

- ☞ **epistulam virō mittimus.** = “We are sending a letter **to the man.**”
- ☞ **verba amicīs dixit.** = “He said the words **to friends.**”
- ☞ **arma tyrannō trādidī.** = “I surrendered (my) weapons **to the tyrant.**”

### Put it into practice

Assuming that all the following are datives, give a translation:

- |            |              |                |
|------------|--------------|----------------|
| 16. nautae | 21. deābus   | 26. puellae    |
| 17. oculīs | 22. deō      | 27. puerō      |
| 18. virīs  | 23. filiābus | 28. sententiīs |
| 19. agrō   | 24. librō    | 29. templis    |
| 20. amīcae | 25. librīs   | 30. templō     |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## The Ablative Case

The Latin ablative case is the case of separation, instrumentality, and location. As with all Roman cases, the ablative case is signaled through the ending of its word:

- ⇒ in the 1st declension, singular nouns end in -ā, and plural nouns end in -īs;
- ⇒ in the 2nd declension, singular nouns end in -ō, and plural nouns end in -īs.

The ablative can easily be confused with other cases, since the forms are identical. The ending of the 1st declension ablative singular is similar to that of the nominative; the 2nd declension singular ablative has the same ending as the dative; and all the plural ablatives are identical in form to the dative. As always in Latin, context decides.

### Put it into practice

Give the ablative form for the following nominatives if it is singular, give the singular; if it is plural, plural):

|                |            |            |               |
|----------------|------------|------------|---------------|
| 31. verbum     | 35. fēmina | 39. deae   | 43. portae    |
| 32. sententiae | 36. aqua   | 40. vir    | 44. pericula  |
| 33. puellae    | 37. poētae | 41. filiae | 45. periculum |
| 34. filia      | 38. factum | 42. amīcus |               |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

The ablative is especially common with prepositions, as we shall see below. By itself, however, the ablative is often used to designate the means by which something is done. In such cases, it is often translated as “by means of” or “with”:

- ⇒ Rōmānī terram armīs vicērunt.  
— “The Romans conquered the land with arms (or by means of arms).”
- ⇒ exemplis discit.  
— “He learns by means of examples (or with examples or through examples).”
- ⇒ epistolam stilō scripsit.  
— “He wrote the letter by means of a pen (or with a pen).”

When the ablative is used by itself like this, it is called the *ablative of means* or the *instrumental ablative*. It will be translated as “by means of” or “by” or “with”.

### Put it into practice

Assuming that all the following are ablatives, give a translation:

|                |               |                       |
|----------------|---------------|-----------------------|
| 46. verbō      | 51. sapientiā | 56. by means of money |
| 47. sentiētiīs | 52. librīs    | 57. by means of words |
| 48. aquā       | 53. victōriā  | 58. by means of anger |
| 49. oculis     | 54. librō     | 59. by means of gifts |
| 50. dōnō       | 55. fortūnā   |                       |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Prepositions

Prepositions are words that connect nouns, pronouns, and phrases to other words in a sentence. They are called prepositions because they are typically “placed before” (**prē-** + **positiō**) the word or phrase that they modify. A word so modified is called the *object* of the preposition, and the preposition together with its object is called a *prepositional phrase*. Here are some prepositional phrases in English:

- ☞ The book is **on the table**.
- ☞ The dog sleeps **under the table**.
- ☞ The shovel is leaning **against the wall**.
- ☞ She read her emails **during class**.

Latin prepositions work roughly the way they do in English. A preposition is placed before its object in a prepositional phrase.

Only two cases are found with Latin prepositions. Their objects are always in either the accusative or the ablative.

### Prepositions with the accusative case

Some prepositions take the accusative case:

- ☞ the preposition **in** followed by a noun in the accusative means “into” (**in templum īvit** = “he went into the temple”);
- ☞ the preposition **propter** followed by a noun in the accusative means “on account of” or “because” (**propter iram id dīxit** = “he said it on account of anger”).

### Prepositions with the ablative case

Some prepositions appear with the ablative:

- ☞ the preposition **cum** followed by a noun in the ablative means “with” or “accompanied by” (**cum amicō īvit** = “he went with a friend”);
- ☞ the preposition **sine** followed by an ablative means “without” (**sine numerō** = “without number”);
- ☞ **dē** followed by an ablative can be translated as “down from” (**dē agrō īvimus** = “we came down from a field”) or as “about” (**dē librō dīxit** = “he spoke about a book”);
- ☞ **ex** or **ē** followed by an ablative means “out” or “out of” (**ē portis eunt** = “they are going out of the gates”; note that **ex** is used if the next word begins with a vowel; **ex agrō it** = “he is going out of the field”);
- ☞ **in** followed by an ablative means “in” (**in templō vīvit** = “he lives in the temple”).

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following short sentences:

60. ad agros iistis.

61. ad agrum īs.

62. cum amico ierunt.

63. in portam eunt.

64. in agros ītis.

65. They went because of anger.

66. I went without friends.

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**The Vocative Case**

The vocative case is used when the noun is being addressed or called. The forms of the vocative (as you can see in the paradigms above) are the same as the nominatives with one exception. Masculine nouns of the second-declension that have nominatives in **-us** form their vocatives in **-e**. A famous vocative is found in Shakespeare when Caesar, while dying at the hands of his assassins notes Brutus among them and addresses him:

☞ “**Et tū, Brūte?**” (“You, too, Brutus?”)

Here, **Brūte** is the vocative of the name **Brūtus**.

In nouns ending in **-ius**, the expected ending **-ie** gets shortened to **-ī**. Thus the vocative of **filius** (“son”), which we will learn in this chapter, is **fīlī**.

**The complete noun paradigm**

You now know the complete paradigm for Latin nouns of the 1st and 2nd declensions. You need to memorize these forms thoroughly.

|             | 2nd decl. masc. |                 | 1st decl.       |                  | 2nd decl. neut. |                 |
|-------------|-----------------|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
|             | <i>singular</i> | <i>plural</i>   | <i>singular</i> | <i>plural</i>    | <i>singular</i> | <i>plural</i>   |
| <i>nom.</i> | <b>amicus</b>   | <b>amicī</b>    | <b>fēmina</b>   | <b>fēminae</b>   | <b>verbum</b>   | <b>verba</b>    |
| <i>gen.</i> | <b>amicī</b>    | <b>amicōrum</b> | <b>fēminae</b>  | <b>fēminārum</b> | <b>verbī</b>    | <b>verbōrum</b> |
| <i>dat.</i> | <b>amicō</b>    | <b>amicīs</b>   | <b>fēminae</b>  | <b>fēminīs</b>   | <b>verbō</b>    | <b>verbīs</b>   |
| <i>acc.</i> | <b>amicum</b>   | <b>amicōs</b>   | <b>fēminam</b>  | <b>fēminās</b>   | <b>verbum</b>   | <b>verba</b>    |
| <i>abl.</i> | <b>amicō</b>    | <b>amicīs</b>   | <b>fēminā</b>   | <b>fēminīs</b>   | <b>verbō</b>    | <b>verbīs</b>   |
| <i>voc.</i> | <b>amice</b>    | <b>amicī</b>    | <b>fēmina</b>   | <b>fēminae</b>   | <b>verbum</b>   | <b>verba</b>    |



## Practice sentences

Translate the following; for sentences with verbs in brackets, translate the sentence twice: once with each verb.

1. dē fāmā et fortūnā patriae dīcimus (dīximus).
2. in Italiā vixī, sed in Rōmā numquam vixī.
3. quid didicistis? dē sapientiā didicimus.
4. quid didicistī? dē sententiīs poētārum didicī.
5. mīsistīne amīcīs dōnum?
6. dē vitā discunt (didicērunt).
7. tyrannus virōs ex agrīs dūxit et patriam armīs vīcit.
8. fugite, ō amīcī, iram tyrannī!
9. Mārcus filiābus pecūniam mittit (mīsit).
10. Rōmānī templa dīs fēcērunt (faciunt).
11. epistulam amīcīs nōn mīsistis.
12. vir cum numerō amīcōrum bibit.
13. fēminae ex Africā fugiunt (fūgērunt) et in Italiam eunt (iērunt).
14. in librō dē irā deōrum lēgimus.
15. in templum virī vēnērunt (veniunt).
16. nōlī nōs tyrannō trādere!
17. propter numerum victōriārum deīs et deābus grātiās ēgimus.
18. The poet's daughter is sending gifts to the woman's sons.
19. I hear the words of a number of men.
20. The people handed over money to the tyrant.
21. A number of men and women lived without the favour of the gods.

## Ancient readings

1. post vīnum, verba.  
**post** — (prep. + acc.) “after, behind”  
*Regimen Sanitatis Salernitanum*
2. nātūra vincit nātūram et dī deōs.  
*Pseudo-Publilius Syrus*
3. ordo dūcit ad Deum.  
**ordo** — “order” (nominative)  
*Augustine*
4. post hoc ergō propter hoc.  
**hoc** — “this (thing)”  
**ergō** — “therefore”  
*logical fallacy*
5. et arma et verba vulnerant.  
**et ...et** — “both ...and” (8b)  
**arma et verba** — (nominative)  
**vulnerant** — “(they) wound”  
*E. Lautenbach, Zitatens Lexikon 80*
6. ex amīcō inimīcum facit patrimōnium.  
**inimīcus** — [in- + amīcus] “enemy”  
**patrimōnium, -iī, n.** — “an inheritance” (nominative)  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 20. 11*
7. ēloquentia cōnstat ex verbīs et ex sententiīs.  
**ēloquentia, -ae, f.** — “eloquence”  
**cōnstat ... ex** — “consists of”  
*Cicero, De Optimo Genere Oratorum 4*
8. liberālibus mē studiīs trādidi.  
**me** — “myself” (here)  
**liberālibus ... studiīs** — “liberal studies”  
*Seneca, Quaestiones Naturales 4.14*
9. numerī regunt mundum.  
**mundus, -i, m.** — “the world” (ch. 12)  
*Pythagoras*

10. virī ivērunt ad tyrannum et dīxērunt, “trāde nōbīs Danielelem”, et is trādīdit virīs eum.

**nōbīs** — “to us” (dative)

*Vulgate, Daniel 14:28*

11. nōlīte confīdere in verbīs mendaciī.

**confidō, confidere** — “trust in, rely on”

**mendacium, -iī, n.** — “lie, falsehood”

*Vulgate, Jeremiah 7:4*

12. mī fili, disce sapientiam!

**mī fili** — “my son” [vocative]

*Vulgate, Proverbs 6:1, 6*

13. Iesus in caelum oculōs advertit et dīxit: “Pater, grātiās agō tibi quoniam audivistī mē.”

**advertit** — “turned”

**tibi** — “to you” (dative)

**quoniam** — “because”

*Vulgate, John 11:41*

14. Iūppiter in caelīs, Caesar regit omnia in terrīs.

**Iūppiter, Iovis, m.** — “Jupiter”

**omnia** — “all things”

*F. Buecheler, A. Reise, E. Lommatzsch (eds.), Latin Anthology, vol. i. 2, no. 813*

### Legal maxim #6

actus Deī

**actus** — “an act”

*Any accident caused by the forces of nature that could not have been prevented by foresight or care.*

### Legal maxim #7

filius, ergō hēres.

**hēres** — “heir”

**ergō** — “therefore”

*Legal maxim referring to son’s right to inherit in cases of intestacy.*

### Legal maxim #8

dē factō

*Phrase used to characterize something which exists in reality, rather than in principle. Often used in contrast to something that is dē iūre (“by right”).*

## The declension song

(To the tune of “The Locomotion”)

Everybody’s learnin’ their cases and endings!

(Come on, baby, do the first declension!)

Start with **fāma, fāmae, fāmae, fāmam** and **fāmā**

(Come on, baby, do the first declension!)

**fāmae**, then **fāmārum, fāmīs, fāmās, fāmīs**

The plural and the singular five cases a piece!

So, come on, come on,

Do the first declension with me!

You’ve got to memorize ‘em

— both your endings and your vocab — each day!

Then you just might get an A!

Declension two is diff’re<sup>n</sup>t, but it’s also quite simple!

(Come on, baby, do declension two now!)

Start with **equus, equī, equō, equum**, and **equō**

(Come on, baby, do declension two now!)

**equī**, then **equōrum, equīs, equōs, equīs**

Don’t forget the vocative; it ends with short-**e**!

So, come on, come on,

Do the declension two now with me

Declension two is also sometimes found in the neuter!

(Come on, baby, do declension two now!)

Start with **bellum, bellī, bellō, bellum** and **bellō**

(Come on, baby, do declension two now!)

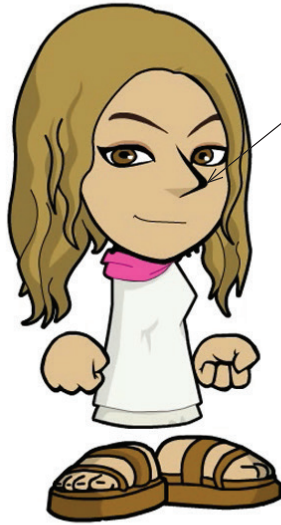
**bella**, then **bellōrum, bellīs, bella, bellīs**

Don’t forget the gender and that adjectives agree!

So, come on, come on,

Do the declension two now with me

haec est Semprōnia



hic est nāsus Semprōniae

hic est Syrus



haec est gena Syrī



hic est digitus



hic est stylus



haec est clāvicula

### Put it into practice

In groups of two and three, begin a dialogue by touching parts of the faces of Sempronia and Syrus with fingers, pens, and keys.

1. **A:** quid tangō?
2. **B:** nāsū tangis.
3. **A:** cuius nāsū tangō?
4. **B:** nāsū Semproniae (or Syrī) tangis.
5. **A:** quōmodo ('how') nāsū Semproniae?
6. **B:** nāsū tangis (e.g.) digitō.
7. Repeat until you have cycled through singular and plural of these objects. Continue, if you have time, with a book (**liber, librī, m.**) and a piece of paper (**papyrus, -ī, m.**) and their plurals.



# 4

---

THE VERB 'TO BE' (ESSE)

THE VERB 'TO BE ABLE' (POSSE)

## Vocabulary to learn

### verbs

---

- sum, esse, fui, futurum** — to be; exist  
**possum, posse, potui, --** — to be able; can  
**eō, ire, ivi (or ii), itum** — to go  
**adeō, adire, adii, aditum** — to go to, go towards; approach  
**exeō, exire, exii, exitum** — to exit, go out, go away  
**pereō, perire, perii, peritum** — to die, perish, pass away; disappear  
**redeō, redire, redii, reditum** — go back, go again; return

### nouns

---

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>agricola, agricolae, m.</b> — farmer                  | <b>magister, magistrī, m.</b> — teacher; master           |
| <b>amicitia, amicitiae, f.</b> — friendship              | <b>mora, morae, f.</b> — delay                            |
| <b>bellum, bellī, n.</b> — war                           | <b>officium, officii, n.</b> — duty; a kindness, a favour |
| <b>causa, causae, f.</b> — a cause, reason; case (legal) | <b>ōtium, ōtīi, n.</b> — leisure; peace (and quiet)       |
| <b>domina, -ae, f.</b> — mistress                        | <b>rēgīna, -ae, f.</b> — queen                            |
| <b>dominus, -ī, m.</b> — master; lord                    | <b>servus, -ī, m.</b> — slave, servant                    |
| <b>exitium, exitiī, n.</b> — destruction                 |   |
| <b>forma, formae, f.</b> — form, shape; beauty           |   |

### prepositions

---

- ab or ā** — (prep. + ablative) from, away from  
**inter** — (prep. + accusative) between, among, amid  
**per** — (prep. + accusative) through  
**trans** — (prep. + accusative) across

### adverbs and other

---

- crās** — tomorrow  
**herī** — yesterday  
**hodiē** — today  
**mihi** — to/for me (dative)  
**nisi** — if not; except, unless  
**nunc** — now  
**quandō** — when; when...?  
**quoque** — also  
**sī** — if  
**tibi** — to/for you (dative)  
**ubi** — where; when



## The Verb ‘to be’

The most common verb in Latin is the verb “to be”. Its principal parts are **sum, esse, fui, futūrum**. In the present tense, it conjugates as follows:

|              |                    |                            |
|--------------|--------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>sum</b>   | “I am”             | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>es</b>    | “ <b>you are</b> ” | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>est</b>   | “he/she/it is”     | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>sumus</b> | “we are”           | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>estis</b> | “you (pl.) are”    | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>sunt</b>  | “they are”         | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |

Its perfect tense adds the perfect endings to the perfect stem (which is the 3rd principal part):

|                |                                     |                            |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>fui</b>     | “I was” or “I have been”            | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>fuisti</b>  | “you were” or “you have been”       | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>fuit</b>    | “he/she/it was” or “he has been”    | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>fuimus</b>  | “we were” or “we have been”         | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>fuistis</b> | “you (pl.) were” or “you have been” | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>fuērunt</b> | “they were” or “they have been”     | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |

The future tense has these endings:

|               |                     |                            |
|---------------|---------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>erō</b>    | “I shall be”        | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>eris</b>   | “you will be”       | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>erit</b>   | “he/she/it will be” | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>erimus</b> | “we shall be”       | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>eritis</b> | “you (pl.) will be” | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>erunt</b>  | “they will be”      | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |

In Chapter 2, we learned that the nominative case is used for the subject of verbs. The nominative is also used for the completion of the verb “to be”. Consider the following sentence:

☞ **vir agricola est.** — “The man is a farmer.”

Here, both **vir** and **agricola** are put in the nominative. (The verb “to be” does not take a direct object; its complement is called a *predicate*.) In these sentences, too, the subject and its predicate are nominative:

☞ **fēminae amīcae sunt.** — “The women are friends.”

☞ **rosae sunt dōna.** — “The roses are gifts.”

As with other verbs, the first and second person forms of the verb “to be” implicitly include a nominative subject. Again, however, the explicit inclusion of a subject is not necessary because the subject in these cases (“I”, “you”, “we”) is implied in the very form of the verb.

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following into English.

- |                                     |                          |
|-------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. fuimus agricolae.                | 5. eritne mora?          |
| 2. rēgīna erit.                     | 6. magister fuit.        |
| 3. virī sunt nautae.                | 7. Are we friends?       |
| 4. poēta et magister fuērunt amīcī. | 8. We shall be teachers. |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

Word-order in sentences that contain **sum** is (like other Latin sentences) quite flexible. One point worth keeping in mind is that where the subject and complement of a verb “to be” are both explicitly stated the unemphatic order is subject, then complement, then verb:

- ☞ **Mārcus et Sextus amīcī sunt.** — “Marcus and Sextus are friends.”
- ☞ **Sempronia fēmina est.** — “Sempronia is a woman.”

**est and sunt as ‘there is’ and ‘there are’**

When the third person forms (**est** or **sunt**) are used without a subject, they can declare the existence of something and can best be translated “there is...” or “there are...”:

- ☞ **est aqua.** — “There is water.” (*or*) “Water exists.”
- ☞ **sunt dī.** — “There are gods.” (*or*) “Gods exist.”
- ☞ **numerus agricolārum est.** — “There is a number of farmers.”

When used this way, the verb “to be” often appears first.

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following.

- |                         |                           |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 9. fēminae sunt amīcae. | 12. ubi est ōtium?        |
| 10. eritne perīculum?   | 13. There are reasons.    |
| 11. fuērunt bella.      | 14. Will there be delays? |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**Omission of the verb “to be”**

**Est** or **sunt** is sometimes omitted, especially in sayings, proverbs, short statements, or questions.

- ☞ **nōn viae vestrae viae meae.** — “Your ways (are) not my ways.” (Vulg., Isaiah 55.8)

If you ever have a sentence without a verb, supply the verb “to be”.

## Compound Verbs

Latin verbs are often modified by adding a preposition such as **ab-**, **ad-**, **cum-**, **de-**, **ex-**, **in-**, **per-**, or **sub-** as a prefix. The prefixes **dis-** and **re-** can be used in this way, too. The resulting meanings are usually easy to understand:

- ☞ **abdūcō** — “I lead away”
- ☞ **exeō** — “I go out”
- ☞ **absum** — “I am away” or “I am absent”
- ☞ **adsum** — “I am present”

Sometimes, however, the meanings are less obvious, as in **perīre** (“to perish”) in this chapter. A compound like **perīre** conjugates exactly like **īre**, but with the prefix added.

- ☞ **pereunt** — “they are perishing” or “they are dying”
- ☞ **periit** — “he perished” or “he died”

## Posse and the Complementary Infinitive

The principal parts of the verb “to be able” are **possum**, **posse**, **potuī**, --. The conjugation is similar to that of the verb **esse**:

|                 |                                   |                            |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>possum</b>   | “I am able” or “I can”            | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>potes</b>    | “you are able” or “you can”       | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>potest</b>   | “he/she/it is able” or “he can”   | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>possumus</b> | “we are able” or “we can”         | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>potestis</b> | “you (pl.) are able” or “you can” | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>possunt</b>  | “they are able” or “they can”     | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |

The verb **posse** typically takes a *complementary infinitive*: an infinitive that *completes* its meaning.

- ☞ **īre possum.** — “I am able to go.” (or) “I can go.”
- ☞ **bibere potest.** — “He is able to drink.” (or) “He can drink.”

The perfect and futures of **posse** are fairly easy. The perfect is formed from the third principal part. The future is merely **pot-** with the future of **esse** appended:

| Perfect          |                                      | Future           |                          |
|------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------|--------------------------|
| <b>potuī</b>     | “I was able” or “I could”            | <b>poterō</b>    | “I shall be able”        |
| <b>potuisti</b>  | “you were able” or “you could”       | <b>poteris</b>   | “you will be able”       |
| <b>potuit</b>    | “he/she/it was able” or “he could”   | <b>poterit</b>   | “he/she/it will be able” |
| <b>potuimus</b>  | “we were able” or “we could”         | <b>poterimus</b> | “we shall be able”       |
| <b>potuistis</b> | “you (pl.) were able” or “you could” | <b>poteritis</b> | “you (pl.) will be able” |
| <b>potuerunt</b> | “they were able” or “they could”     | <b>poterunt</b>  | “they will be able”      |

Note that some of these forms are potentially easy to mistake for one another, especially in the 3rd person plural. Keep in mind that the perfect has a tell-tale **-u-**.

Again, the verb takes a complementary infinitive:

- ⇒ **gerere potuimus.** — “We were able to accomplish.” (or) “We could accomplish.”
- ⇒ **adiuvāre potuērunt.** — “They were able to help.” (or) “They could help.”

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following.

- |                        |                              |
|------------------------|------------------------------|
| 15. possunt bibere.    | 19. fugere potuit.           |
| 16. scribere poterunt. | 20. poteritis regere.        |
| 17. potuimus tangere.  | 21. I can read.              |
| 18. discere poteris.   | 22. He will be able to lead. |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**Impersonal use of posse**

It is common to find the 3rd person singulars (**potest**, **potuit**, **poterit**) used impersonally and meaning “it is possible” or “it was possible” or “it will be possible”.

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following.

- |                      |                              |
|----------------------|------------------------------|
| 23. potuit fugere.   | 26. poterit scribere.        |
| 24. poterit dūcere.  | 27. It is possible to live.  |
| 25. potestne redire? | 28. It was possible to hear. |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**Practice sentences**

1. amīcī sunt dōnum deōrum.
2. officium hodiē; crās ōtium.
3. quandō sumus inter amīcōs in ōtiō, vīnum sine aquā bibere possumus.
4. magistrī ā tyrannīs sine morā fūgērunt. possuntne redīre hodiē?
5. quō iit fēmina? ea iit in templum.
6. quid rēgīna dē officiō dixit tibi?
7. quando filiī agricolārum domum redeunt, trans agrōs semper eunt.
8. filiī nautārum et agricolārum amīcī esse nōn possunt.
9. Mārcus et Gaius nōn virī sunt, sed puerī.
10. estne fēmina Sempronia? nōn fēmina est, sed puella.
11. agricolae bene vīvere nōn semper potuērunt, sed nunc vītam cum ōtiō agere possunt.
12. sī bellum hodiē est, crās exitium erit.
13. poēta dē formā numerī amīcārum scrībere potest.
14. agricolae ex agrīs herī vēnērunt, sed domum hodiē redīre possunt.
15. Where did you (sg.) read the letter?
16. Was he able to capture you in the temple?
17. The queen led the women out of the temple and now they live in leisure.
18. A number of men and women lived without the gods' favour. They were able to accomplish nothing in life.

## Ancient readings

1. quod periit, periit.  
**quod** — “what; that which”  
*Plautus, Cistellaria 703*
2. est lupus in fābulā.  
**fābula, -ae, f.** — “the story”  
*Ancient proverb*
3. vīta vīnum est.  
*Petronius, Satyricon 34.6*
4. nihil sine Deō.  
*Motto of the royal family of Romania*
5. dum vīta est, spēs est.  
**spēs** — “hope” (nominative)  
*Ancient proverb*
6. nihil in terrā sine causā est.  
*Vulgate, Job 5.6*
7. satis vīxī; invictus enim pereō.  
**satis** — (adv.) “enough”  
**invictus** — “unconquered”  
**enim** — “for”  
*Cornelius Nepos, Epaminondas 9*
8. sine amīcitiā vīta est nihil.  
*Cicero, De Amicitia 86 (adapted)*
9. sum quod eris, fuī quod es.  
**quod** — “that which; what”  
*Funerary inscription*
10. sunt puerī puerī; puerī puerīlia agunt.  
**puerīlia, n. pl.** — “puerile things; childish things”  
*O. Schreger, Studiosus Jovialis 52*
11. vīta rustica iūstitiae magistra est.  
**vīta rustica** — “rustic life, rural life”  
**iūstitia** — “justice”  
 (hint: what is the teacher of what?)  
*Cicero, De Roscio Amerino 75*

12. fac nunc tibi amīcōs.

**tibi** — “for yourself”

*Thomas à Kempis, De Imitatione Christi 1.23.44*

13. quis potest sine offulā vīvere?

**offula, -ae, f.** — “a little treat”

*Suetonius, Divus Claudius 40*

14. Plato ipse melius dicere nōn potuit.

**Plato ipse** — “Plato himself”

**melius** — “better”

*Bacon, Sermones, De Atheismo*

15. sine amīcō nōn potes bene vīvere.

*Thomas à Kempis, De Imitatione Christi 2.8.20*

16. natūram frēnāre potes, sed vincere numquam.

**frēnō, frēnāre, frēnāvī, frēnātum** — “to bridle, curb, restrain”

*Palingenius, Zodiacus Vitae, Leo 694*

17. ager sine cultūrā fructuōsus esse nōn potest.

**cultūra, -ae, f.** — “cultivation”

**fructuōsus** — “fruitful, productive”

*Cicero, Tusculanae Disputationes 2.14*

### **Legal maxim #10**

in morā

*In civil law, a borrower who fails to return a loaned object on time is in default as a consequence of being “in mora”.*

### **Legal maxim #11**

ex officiō

*A right or obligation that exists owing to an official position is said to be held “ex officio”.*





5

---

NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

## Vocabulary to learn

### nouns

**amor, amōris, m.** — love  
**carmen, carminis, n.** — song, poem  
**cīvitās, cīvitātis, f.** — state, citizenship  
**corpus, corporis, n.** — body  
**frāter, frātris, m.** — brother  
**homō, hominis, m.** — a human being, man; a person (*pl.* people)  
**honor, honōris, m.** — honour, mark of honour; office; privilege  
**labor, labōris, m.** — labour, work, toil  
**lēx, lēgis, f.** — law; statute  
**libertās, libertātis, f.** — liberty, freedom  
**māter, mātris, f.** — mother  
**mōs, mōris, m.** — custom, manner; nature; habit  
**mōrēs, mōrum, m. pl.** — morals; character  
**nōmen, nōminis, n.** — name; repute; noun  
**pater, patris, m.** — father  
**pāx, pācis, f.** — peace  
**rēx, rēgis, m.** — king  
**scrīptor, scrīptōris, m.** — a writer  
**soror, sorōris, f.** — sister  
**tempus, temporis, n.** — time, occasion, opportunity  
**timor, timōris, m.** — fear  
**uxor, uxōris, f.** — wife  
**vērītās, -tātis, f.** — truth  
**virgō, virginis, f.** — maiden, virgin  
**virtūs, virtūtis, f.** — manliness, excellence, virtue  
**vox, vōcis, f.** — voice

### other

**-que** — and (enclitic particle added to a word to attach it to what went before)  
**aut** — or  
**tum** — then, at that time

## The Third Declension

So far you have met nouns of first and second declensions. As you have seen, nouns of the first declension have nominatives ending with **-a**, and those of the second declension **-us** or (if neuter) **-um**. Third declension nouns have a wide variety of endings, including **-us**, **-as**, **-or**, and **-x**.

Also first declension is mostly feminine and the second declension almost exclusively masculine. Third declension nouns, by contrast, can be masculine, feminine, or neuter. Here are one of each:

|                   | <i>masculine</i>    | <i>feminine</i>          | <i>neuter</i>          |
|-------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>nom. sing.</i> | <b>rēx - ‘king’</b> | <b>virtūs - ‘virtue’</b> | <b>corpus - ‘body’</b> |
| <i>gen. sing.</i> | <b>rēgis</b>        | <b>virtūtis</b>          | <b>corporis</b>        |
| <i>dat. sing.</i> | <b>rēgī</b>         | <b>virtūti</b>           | <b>corpori</b>         |
| <i>acc. sing.</i> | <b>rēgem</b>        | <b>virtūtem</b>          | <b>corpus</b>          |
| <i>abl. sing.</i> | <b>rēge</b>         | <b>virtūte</b>           | <b>corpore</b>         |
| <i>nom. plur.</i> | <b>rēgēs</b>        | <b>virtūtēs</b>          | <b>corpora</b>         |
| <i>gen. plur.</i> | <b>rēgum</b>        | <b>virtūtum</b>          | <b>corporum</b>        |
| <i>dat. plur.</i> | <b>rēgibus</b>      | <b>virtūtibus</b>        | <b>corporibus</b>      |
| <i>acc. plur.</i> | <b>rēgēs</b>        | <b>virtūtēs</b>          | <b>corpora</b>         |
| <i>abl. plur.</i> | <b>rēgibus</b>      | <b>virtūtibus</b>        | <b>corporibus</b>      |

There are a few important points here:

- ↪ note that the ending **-us**, which you know as the nominative singular of masculine nouns of the second declension, can also be the nominative singular of feminine nouns of the third (**virtūs**), and the nominative and accusative singular of neuter third declension nouns (**corpus**);
- ↪ also note that the ending **-a** is both nominative singular of the first declension and nominative and accusative plural of neuter third declension nouns;
- ↪ also note that the ending **-um** is accusative singular masculine in the second declension (nominative and accusative in the neuter), but genitive plural in the third;
- ↪ the genitive singular of the third is **-is**, the dative and ablative plurals of the first and second is **-is**, but most Latin texts don't mark the quantities, so you will have to know which endings are possible for which nouns.

Ambiguities like this are a large part of the reason that Latin is so difficult, and the only way to overcome them is knowing your vocabulary and forms thoroughly.

#### Put it into practice

Translate the following prepositional phrases.

- |                          |   |
|--------------------------|---|
| 1. sine amōre vēritātis  | 5. cum sorōribus rēgis                    |
| 2. inter nomina amīcōrum | 6. sine timōre exitiī                     |
| 3. in nomine patris      | 7. out of the fields of the king          |
| 4. per terrās rēgis      | 8. on account of the destruction of peace |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**-que**

You have already met the enclitic particle **-ne**, which is added to the first word of a sentence to turn that sentence into a question.

Another enclitic particle is **-que**, which attaches a word to what goes before it and means “and”.

- ☞ senātus populus**que** Rōmānus — “The senate and Roman people”
- ☞ inter frātrēm sorōrem**que** — “between brother and sister”

In a series, one **-que** following another means “both . . . and”

- ☞ lēgēs deōrum**que** hominum**que** — “the laws of both gods and men”

**Put it into practice**

For each of the following pairs replace **et** with **-que**.

- |                           |                              |
|---------------------------|------------------------------|
| 9. cum vinō et aquā       | 12. propter virōs et feminās |
| 10. puellae et pueri      | 13. māter et pater           |
| 11. sine verbīs et factis | 14. frātrum et sorōrum       |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**Practice sentences**

1. scrīptor librum dē amōre pācis scrīpsit. verba eius legō.
2. ubi virtūte patriam rēx regit, populus sine timōre vīvit.
3. in carminibus poētārum dē mōribus hominum legimus.
4. nihil de timōre bellī discere possumus nisi veritātem dē pāce intellegimus.
5. dē honōribus Rōmānōrum aut dē sentiētiis Graecōrum semper scrīptōrēs scrībunt.
6. nōlīte filiīs agricolārum dē labōre dicere. labōrem intellegunt.
7. numerum virōrum in bellum rēx dūxit.
8. nihil sine labōre capere potuimus.
9. epistolam dē mōribus libertātis fratrēs rēgis mīsērunt.
10. sī patriam sine armīs rēx regit, cum honōre regit.

11. officium honorque vitās hominum regere possunt.
12. fuit tempus quandō carmina poētārum lēgimus. sed nunc numquam dē poētis carminibusque cogitat.
13. There will be a time when there will be writers in the king's land.
14. The farmers fled from the fields and did not return home.
15. The maiden died in the name of peace and freedom.
16. On account of fear you (pl.) handed over the king's sons to me.
17. You (pl.) captured the mother and (her) daughter yesterday. Where are they now?

## Ancient readings

1. vox populī, vox Deī.  
*Alcuin, Epistle 132*
2. amor regit sine lēge.  
*Ancient proverb*
3. error filiū est errōris.  
**error, errōris, m.** — “error”  
*G.W.Freytag, Arabum Proverbia 24*
4. vestis virum facit.  
**vestis, vestis, f.** — “clothing”  
*Erasmus, Adages 3.1.60*
5. amor vincit omnia.  
**omnia** — “everything”  
*Chaucer, Canterbury Tales*
6. vērītās omnia vincit.  
*Motto of Wilfrid Laurier University*
7. labor omnia vincit.  
*Motto of the State of Oklahoma*

8. fāta regunt hominēs.  
**fāta** — “the fates” (nominative)  
*Juvenal, Saturae 9.32*
9. omnia vincit amor, sed pecūnia vincit amōrem.  
*Walther no. 20009*
10. sīc eunt fāta hominum.  
**sīc** — “thus, so; in this way”  
*Ancient proverb*
11. labor paupertātem vincit.  
**paupertās, -tātis, f.** — “poverty” (ch. 14)  
*Ancient proverb*
12. inter arma silent lēgēs.  
**silent** — “(they) are silent”  
*Juristic maxim, Black 994*
13. mōs regit lēgem.  
*Motto of the Mosley family*
14. vēritās numquam perit.  
*Ancient proverb*
15. vēritās ōdit morās.  
**ōdit** — “he/she/it hates”  
*Seneca, Oedipus 852*
16. ubi est virtūs, ibi miseria esse nōn potest.  
**ibi** — “there, in that place”  
**miseria, -ae, f.** — “misery”  
*Cicero, De Finibus 5.95*
17. dēlectātiōnis causā scribunt poētae, nōn ūtilitātis.  
**causā** + genitive — “for the sake of”  
**dēlectātiō -ōnis, f.** — “pleasure, amusement”  
**ūtilitas -tātis, f.** — “utility, usefulness”  
*Augustine, De Civitate Dei 25.6.6*
18. homō ex animō cōnstat et corpore.  
**cōnstat** — “consists”  
**ex** — “of”  
**animus, -i, m.** — “mind, soul” (ch. 8)  
*Cicero, De Natura Deorum 1.98*

19. factum lex, nōn sententiam, videt.

*Digesta 23.2.43.12*

### Legal maxim #12

lĕx nōn rĕtrō agit.

**rĕtrō** — (adv.) “back, backwards, formerly; retroactively”

*Legal principle establishing that laws cannot be applied retroactively.*

### Legal maxim #13

rĕx est vĭvens lĕx.

**vĭvens** — “living”

*Establishes the king as the embodiment of the law.*

### Legal maxim #14

corpore animōque

*Used of an offense committed both with intent and by physical action.*

## The Third Declension Anthem

(Sung to the tune of the Internationale)

Arise and learn the third declension!  
Its nouns have gender, number, case.  
**rĕx, rĕgis, rĕgī, rĕgem, rĕge;**  
the plural begins **rĕgēs**;

**regum** then **-ibus, -ēs, and -ibus**  
— thus we must ‘the king’ decline.  
Make sure to memorize the genders,  
because adjectives may not rhyme!

So come **fratrēs sorōrēsque!**  
The **tempus** comes at last!  
Without the third declension  
there is no **libertās!**

No **virtūs, no honor,**  
no **pāx, no veritas!**  
Without the third declension  
there is no **libertas!**

*Music: Pierre De Geyter, 1888*

*Lyrics: Claude Eilers, 2010*





# 6

---

ADJECTIVES OF THE 1ST AND 2ND  
DECLENSION

SUBSTANTIVE USE OF THE ADJECTIVE

ABLATIVE OF TIME

## Vocabulary to learn

### adjectives

|   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>antiquus, -a, -um</b> — ancient                          | <b>noster, nostra, nostrum</b> — our, ours         |
| <b>avārus, -a, -um</b> — greedy, miserly                    | <b>optimus, -a, -um</b> — best; very good          |
| <b>bellus, -a, -um</b> — beautiful, pretty; fine, excellent | <b>parvus, -a, -um</b> — small                     |
| <b>bonus, -a, -um</b> — good; fine, excellent               | <b>paucī, -ae, -a</b> — few (plural only)          |
| <b>Graecus, -a, -um</b> — Greek                             | <b>pessimus, -a, -um</b> — worst; very bad         |
| <b>hūmānus, -a, -um</b> — human; humane; refined, civilized | <b>prīmus, -a, -um</b> — first; foremost           |
| <b>magnus, -a, -um</b> — great, large                       | <b>Rōmānus, -a, -um</b> — Roman                    |
| <b>malus, -a, -um</b> — bad, evil                           | <b>stultus, -a, -um</b> — foolish                  |
| <b>maximus, -a, -um</b> — greatest; very great              | <b>tuus, -a, -um</b> — your (sg.)                  |
| <b>meus, -a, -um</b> — my                                   | <b>ultimus, -a, -um</b> — last, final              |
| <b>minimus, -a, -um</b> — smallest; very small              | <b>vērus, -a, -um</b> — true, real                 |
| <b>mortuus, -a, -um</b> — dead, lifeless                    | <b>vester, vestra, vestrum</b> — your, yours (pl.) |
| <b>multus, -a, -um</b> — much (singular); many (plural)     | <b>vīvus, -a, -um</b> — living; alive              |

### verbs

|   |
|---|
| <b>fallō, -ere, fefelli, falsum</b> — to deceive, trick, mislead; lie                       |
| <b>gerō, -ere, gessi, gestum</b> — to carry; carry on, manage, conduct; accomplish, perform |
| <b>bellum gerere</b> — to wage war  |

### nouns

|   |
|---|
| <b>annus, annī, m.</b> — year           |
| <b>hōra, -ae, f.</b> — hour, time       |
| <b>via, -ae, f.</b> — road, street, way |

### other

|  |
|--|
| <b>iam</b> — now; already; soon; then, therefore |
| <b>ibi</b> — there; then                         |
| <b>saepe</b> — often                             |

## Adjectives

Adjectives are words that modify nouns or pronouns by describing, identifying, or quantifying them. There are two main families of adjectives in Latin. One of these, which we will consider now, belongs to the first and second declensions, and it gets its feminine endings from the first declension and its masculine and neuter endings from the second. Here is paradigm for the adjective **magnus, -a, -um** — “great, large”.

|                   | <i>masculine</i> | <i>feminine</i> | <i>neuter</i>   |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| <i>nom. sing.</i> | <b>magnus</b>    | <b>magna</b>    | <b>magnum</b>   |
| <i>gen. sing.</i> | <b>magnī</b>     | <b>magnae</b>   | <b>magnī</b>    |
| <i>dat. sing.</i> | <b>magnō</b>     | <b>magnae</b>   | <b>magnō</b>    |
| <i>acc. sing.</i> | <b>magnum</b>    | <b>magnam</b>   | <b>magnum</b>   |
| <i>abl. sing.</i> | <b>magnō</b>     | <b>magnā</b>    | <b>magnō</b>    |
| <i>voc. sing.</i> | <b>magne</b>     | <b>magna</b>    | <b>magnum</b>   |
| <i>nom. plur.</i> | <b>magnī</b>     | <b>magnae</b>   | <b>magna</b>    |
| <i>gen. plur.</i> | <b>magnōrum</b>  | <b>magnārum</b> | <b>magnōrum</b> |
| <i>dat. plur.</i> | <b>magnīs</b>    | <b>magnīs</b>   | <b>magnīs</b>   |
| <i>acc. plur.</i> | <b>magnōs</b>    | <b>magnās</b>   | <b>magna</b>    |
| <i>abl. plur.</i> | <b>magnīs</b>    | <b>magnīs</b>   | <b>magnīs</b>   |
| <i>voc. plur.</i> | <b>magnī</b>     | <b>magnae</b>   | <b>magna</b>    |

When do you use which form? An adjective *agrees* with its noun in *gender, number, and case*. So pairing them with third declension nouns produces the following:

|                   |   |  |                                       |
|-------------------|---|--|---------------------------------------|
| <i>nom. sing.</i> | <b>bon<u>u</u>s r<u>e</u>x</b>            | <b>bon<u>a</u> ux<u>o</u>r</b>             | <b>bon<u>u</u>m carmen</b>            |
| <i>gen. sing.</i> | <b>bon<u>i</u> r<u>e</u>gis</b>           | <b>bon<u>ae</u> ux<u>o</u>ris</b>          | <b>bon<u>i</u> carminis</b>           |
| <i>dat. sing.</i> | <b>bon<u>o</u> r<u>e</u>g<u>i</u></b>     | <b>bon<u>ae</u> ux<u>o</u>ri</b>           | <b>bon<u>o</u> carmin<u>i</u></b>     |
| <i>acc. sing.</i> | <b>bon<u>u</u>m r<u>e</u>gem</b>          | <b>bon<u>am</u> ux<u>o</u>rem</b>          | <b>bon<u>u</u>m carmen</b>            |
| <i>abl. sing.</i> | <b>bon<u>o</u> r<u>e</u>ge</b>            | <b>bon<u>a</u> ux<u>o</u>re</b>            | <b>bon<u>o</u> carmine</b>            |
| <i>voc. sing.</i> | <b>bon<u>e</u> r<u>e</u>x</b>             | <b>bon<u>a</u> ux<u>o</u>r</b>             | <b>bon<u>u</u>m carmen</b>            |
| <i>nom. plur.</i> | <b>bon<u>i</u> r<u>e</u>g<u>e</u>s</b>    | <b>bon<u>ae</u> ux<u>o</u>r<u>e</u>s</b>   | <b>bon<u>a</u> carmin<u>a</u></b>     |
| <i>gen. plur.</i> | <b>bon<u>o</u>rum r<u>e</u>gum</b>        | <b>bon<u>ar</u>um ux<u>o</u>rum</b>        | <b>bon<u>o</u>rum carminum</b>        |
| <i>dat. plur.</i> | <b>bon<u>is</u> r<u>e</u>gib<u>u</u>s</b> | <b>bon<u>is</u> ux<u>o</u>rib<u>u</u>s</b> | <b>bon<u>is</u> carminib<u>u</u>s</b> |
| <i>acc. plur.</i> | <b>bon<u>o</u>s r<u>e</u>g<u>e</u>s</b>   | <b>bon<u>as</u> ux<u>o</u>r<u>e</u>s</b>   | <b>bon<u>a</u> carmin<u>a</u></b>     |
| <i>abl. plur.</i> | <b>bon<u>is</u> r<u>e</u>gib<u>u</u>s</b> | <b>bon<u>is</u> ux<u>o</u>rib<u>u</u>s</b> | <b>bon<u>is</u> carminib<u>u</u>s</b> |
| <i>voc. plur.</i> | <b>bon<u>i</u> r<u>e</u>g<u>e</u>s</b>    | <b>bon<u>ae</u> ux<u>o</u>r<u>e</u>s</b>   | <b>bon<u>a</u> carmin<u>a</u></b>     |

The noun going with an adjective is called its *antecedent*. So, how do we know what form an adjective takes? We look at its antecedent. How do we know which noun is the antecedent of which adjective? It will be the noun that is identical to it in gender, number, and case.

Consider these sentences:

- ☞ **vir malum** tyrannum fūgit. — “The man fled the evil tyrant.”
- ☞ **virum malus** tyrannus cēpit. — “The evil tyrant captured the man.”

In the first, tyrant is accusative, masculine, singular; the adjective **malus** agrees with it and is also accusative, masculine, singular. In the second, **tyrannus** is the nominative subject. Its adjective agrees with it. Note, too, that in Latin adjectives can come before or after their nouns.

Adjectives can also be used in sentences with the verb “to be”. In such cases, the adjectives will be in the nominative; its number and gender will be determined by its antecedent.

- ☞ **puella est bona.** — “The girl is good.”
- ☞ **agricola bonus est.** — “The farmer is good.”
- ☞ **dōnum est bonum.** — “The gift is good.”

Note that adjectives have the same endings as their respective declensions, which means that sometimes adjectives will rhyme with their nouns. When this happens, however, it is coincidental.

Adjectives agree in gender, number, and case, so:

- ☞ **libertās est bona.** — “Freedom is good.”
- ☞ **amor bonus est.** — “Love is good.”
- ☞ **carmen bonum est.** — “The song is good.”

### Adjectives ending in -er

You already know a handful of nouns of the second declension that end in **-er**: **ager**, **puer**, **magister**, etc. Although the nominative singular of these nouns ends in **-er**, all other forms are regular. There is a group of adjectives that do the same for the masculine singular. One example:

|                   | <i>masculine</i>        | <i>feminine</i>         | <i>neuter</i>           |
|-------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>nom. sing.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>er</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>ra</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>rum</b>   |
| <i>gen. sing.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>ri</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>rae</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>ri</b>    |
| <i>dat. sing.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>rō</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>rae</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>rō</b>    |
| <i>acc. sing.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>rum</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>ram</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>rum</b>   |
| <i>abl. sing.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>rō</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>rā</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>rō</b>    |
| <i>voc. sing.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>er</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>ra</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>rum</b>   |
| <i>nom. plur.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>ri</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>rae</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>ra</b>    |
| <i>gen. plur.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>rōrum</b> | <b>no<u>st</u>rārum</b> | <b>no<u>st</u>rōrum</b> |
| <i>dat. plur.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>ris</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>ris</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>ris</b>   |
| <i>acc. plur.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>rōs</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>rās</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>ra</b>    |
| <i>abl. plur.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>ris</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>ris</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>ris</b>   |
| <i>voc. plur.</i> | <b>no<u>st</u>ri</b>    | <b>no<u>st</u>rae</b>   | <b>no<u>st</u>ra</b>    |

As you can see, apart from the masculine nominative singular, the forms are what you would expect for other adjectives of the 1st and 2nd declension.

**Put it into practice**

Supply the correct adjective for the following prepositional phrases.

1. without true virtue — sine \_\_\_\_\_ virtute
2. without Roman laws — sine legibus \_\_\_\_\_
3. with the worst morals — cum \_\_\_\_\_ moribus
4. among human names — inter nomina \_\_\_\_\_
5. among your (sg.) brothers — inter fratres \_\_\_\_\_

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**Tuus and vester**

This chapter's vocabulary includes the adjectives **tuus**, **-a**, **-um** ("your") and **vester**, **vestra**, **vestrum** ("your"). When is which used? Use **tuus** when the "you" is singular; **vester**, when it is plural: a group of people who would describe their own property as (e.g.) **nostra** will be **vōs** to you, and so their property would be **vestra** when you address them. A single individual who describes (e.g.) his brother as **meus** is **tū** to you, and therefore when addressing him you would refer to his brother as **tuus**.

**The Substantive Use of the Adjective**

Adjectives can be used as nouns, just as in English expressions such as "Only the good die young", or "The good, the bad, and the ugly". When an adjective is used without a noun, the noun is implied by its gender and number. For example:

- ☞ **bonus** — "a good man"
- ☞ **bona** (singular) — "a good woman"
- ☞ **bonum** — "a good thing"
- ☞ **bonī** — "good people" (or, "the good")
- ☞ **bona** (plural) — "good things" or "goods" or "property"

This is called the substantive use of the adjective. (Substantive is simply another word for noun.)

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following substantive adjectives.

- |                       |                       |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 6. bonī (nom. pl.)    | 10. stultī (gen. sg.) |
| 7. hūmāna (neut. pl.) | 11. Graecōrum         |
| 8. minima (neut. pl.) | 12. bonum             |
| 9. mortuī (nom. pl.)  | 13. stultī (nom. pl.) |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Ablative of ‘time when’

In Latin, references to the time during which something happened are often put in the ablative: a phenomenon that we call *the ablative of time when* or *ablative of time during which*. The English equivalent usually uses a prepositional phrase such as **at**, **on**, **in**, or **within**. Here are some examples:

- ☞ **tempore belli bene vivere nōn possumus.** — “In a time of war we are unable to live well.”
- ☞ **bonis annis agricolae bene vivunt.** — “In good years the farmers live well.”
- ☞ **paucis hōris vēnire potērunt.** — “They will be able to come within a few hours.”

How can you distinguish this construction from some of the other ablative constructions that you have learned, such as the ablative of means? The key here is that the noun in such a phrase will indicate some unit of time.

(The abbreviation AD in years is in fact an ablative of time: it abbreviates *annō Domini*, “in the year of the Lord”.)

### Put it into practice

Translate the following temporal phrases that use the “ablative of time when”.

- |                         |                |
|-------------------------|----------------|
| 14. antiquis temporibus | 16. primō annō |
| 15. multis hōris        | 17. primā hōrā |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Practice sentences

1. Caesar bellum magnā cum virtūte gessit.
2. agricola vītam bonam in agrīs agere potest.
3. tum carmen legere potuimus, et nunc dē verbīs eius scribimus.
4. multō cum timōre frātrēs meī vērītatem dē mōribus rēgis dīcunt.
5. dūc in bellum, ō rēgīna, virōs tuōs fēmināsque!
6. fēminaene multae Rōmam ire potērunt?
7. frāter noster magnum librum dē patriae exitiō scripsit.
8. ite nunc, mī amīcī, et in pāce vīvite!
9. sorōrēs vestrae parvum numerum nōminum in librō scribunt.
10. paucis hōris optimum vīnum avārī bibērunt.

11. temporibus antiquīs rēx optimōs hominēs in agrōs mīsit.
12. pater tuus dīs gratiās ēgit et fēcit bellum templum.
13. pāx est bona; bella, mala.
14. in minimīs maxima perīcula sunt.
15. malōrum sententia paucōs stultōs saepe fallit.
16. ex optimō patre saepe pessimī filiī veniunt.
17. Many (people) read the poems of good poets.
18. Your (pl.) words mislead the foolish (men).
19. The evil tyrant waged war with my homeland.
20. The worst opinions are often foolish.
21. The poet sent a beautiful poem to the queen's daughters.

## Ancient readings

1. bibe cum gaudiō vīnum tuum.  
**gaudium, -iī, n.** — “joy”  
*Vulgate, Ecclesiastes 9.7*
2. stulte, quid ēgisti?  
*Martial, Epigrammata 3.85.3*
3. vērae amīcitiāe sempiternae sunt.  
**sempiternae** — “eternal”  
*Cicero, De Amicitia 32*
4. librī mūtī magistrī sunt.  
**mūtus, -a, -um** — “mute, speechless”  
*Aulus Gellius, Noctes Atticae 14.2.1*
5. amor magnus magister est.  
*Augustine*
6. stultum stultus cognōscit, et lupum lupus.  
**cognōscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum** — “recognize, perceive”  
*Ancient proverb*

7. ego sum via et vēritās et vīta.  
**ego** — “I”  
*Vulgate, John 14.6*
8. poētae quī bona vīna bibunt, bona carmina scribunt.  
**quī** — “who”  
*G. v. Gaal, Sprüchwörter, no. 1692*
9. superest sine mē nōmen in urbe meum.  
**superest** — “remains, survives”  
**urbs, urbis, f.** — “city”  
*Ovid, Tristia 3.10.2*
10. lēgēs sine mōribus vānae sunt.  
**vānus, -a, -um** — “empty”  
*Horace, Carmina 3.24.35*
11. odium numquam potest esse bonum.  
**odium, -iī, n.** — *hatred (28)*  
*Spinosa, Ethica 4. Propositio 45*
12. Lucius Tarquinius Superbus bellum cum Vulscīs gessit et ex spoliis  
templum in Capitoliō Iovī fēcit.  
**Vulscī** (an ancient people) — “the Vulsci”  
**spolium, -iī, n.** — “plunder; spoils”  
**Iovī** — “to Jupiter”  
*Livy, Ab Urbe Condita, Per. 1*
13. historia, testis temporum, magistra vītae est.  
**historia, -ae, f.** — “history”  
**testis** — “witness”  
*Cicero, De Oratore 2.36*
14. et mea omnia tua sunt et tua mea sunt.  
**omnia** — “all things, everything”  
*Vulgate, John 17.10*
15. iam frāter frāterem, iam fallit filia mātrem, iamque pater filium, iam  
fallit amīcus amīcum.  
*Jakob Werner, Lateinische Sprichwörter 59*
16. magna venit nōn sine magnō fama labōre.  
*Konrad Celtes, Liber Amorum 1.71*



17. lucerna corporis tuī est oculus tuus.  
**lucerna** — “lamp; light”  
*Vulgate, Matthew 6.22*
18. patria tua est ubicumque vīvis bene.  
**ubicumque** — “wherever”  
*Publilius Syrus*
19. ubi enim thēsaurus vester est, ibi et cor vestrum erit.  
**thesaurus, -ī, m.** — “treasure”  
**cor, cordis, n.** — “heart”  
*Vulgate, Luke 12.34*
20. nihil est bonum nisi quod honestum est; quod honestum, est certe bonum.  
**quod** — “that which, what”  
**honestus, -a, -um** — “honorable”  
**certē** — “surely, certainly”  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 120. 3*
21. amīcitia nisi inter bonōs esse nōn potest.  
**esse** — “exist” (here)  
*Cicero, De Amicitia 65 (adapted)*
22. ira Iovis magnī causa timōris est.  
**Iovis** — “Jupiter” (genitive)  
*Ovid, Fasti, 5.248*
23. Agamemnōn, rēx Graecōrum optimus, maximās cōpiās dūxit ad Trōiam.  
**cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.** — “forces, troops”  
*Cicero, Tusculanae Disputationes 1.98*
24. saepe venit magnō praemiō tardus amor.  
**praemium, -iī, n.** — “a reward, a prize”  
**tardus, -a, -um** — “slow” (26)  
*Propertius, Elegiae 1.8.26*
25. ī, bone, quō virtus tua tē vocat!  
*Horace, Epistulae 2.2.37*

**Legal maxim #15**

optimus lēgum interpres consuētūdo.

**interpres, interpretis, m./f.** — “*interpreter*”

**consuētūdō, -dinis, f.** — “*use; custom, habit*”

*Legal principle identifying established practice as the most reliable guide of a law’s meaning.*

**Isidore, Etymologiae 5.1**

Dē auctōribus lēgum. Moysēs populī Hebraei p̄rimus d̄ivīnās lēgēs sacrīs litterīs explicāvit. Phorōnēus rēx Graecīs p̄rimus lēgēs iūdiciaque constituit. Mercurius Trimegistus p̄rimus lēgēs Aegyptiis trādidit. Solon p̄rimus lēgēs Athēniensibus trādidit.

**auctor, auctōris, m.** — “*author, originator*”

**Moysēs** — “*Moses*”

**Hebraeus, -a, -um** — “*Hebrew*”

**sacrīs litterīs** — “*in sacred writings*”

**explicō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum** — “*unfold; set forth, explain*”

**iūdicium, -iī, n.** — “*law-court, legal judgement*”

**constituit** — “*established*”

**Athēniensibus** — “*to the Athenians*”

**The Lord’s Prayer (Matthew 6.9–13)**

Pater noster, quī es in caelis, sanctificētur  
nōmen tuum.

adveniat regnum tuum.

fiat voluntās tua sicut in caelō et in terrā.

pānem nostrum cotidiānum dā nōbis hodiē.

et dimitte nōbis dēbita nostra sicut et  
dimittimus dēbitōribus nostrīs.

et nōli nōs indūcere in tentātiōnem sed  
liberā nōs ā malō.

quia tuum est regnum, et potentia, et glōria  
in saecula saeculōrum.

Āmēn.

**quī** — “*who*”

**sanctificētur** — “*hallowed be...*”

**adveniat** — “*may it arrive...*”

**fiat** — “*may it happen*”

**voluntās, -tātis, f.** — “*will*”

**sicut** — “*just as*”

**panis cotidiānus** — “*our daily bread*”

**dā nōbis** — “*give to us*” (imperative)

**dimittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum** — “*forgive*”

**debitum, -ī, n.** — “*a debt*”

**dēbitōr, -ōris, m.** — “*a debtor*”

**tentātiō, -tionis, f.** — “*temptation*”

**liberā** — “*free*” (imperative)

**quia** — “*because*”

**saeculum, -ī, n.** — “*an age*”

# 7

---

PRESENT TENSE OF THE 1ST AND 2ND  
CONJUGATION

FUTURE TENSE OF THE 3RD AND 4TH  
CONJUGATION

## Vocabulary to learn

### first conjugation verbs

**amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum** — to love, like  
**cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātum** — to dine  
**cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum** — to think, ponder; consider  
**culpō, culpāre, culpāvī, culpātum** — to blame, find fault with  
**dō, dāre, dedī, datum** — to give, offer  
**errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum** — to wander; err, go astray, be mistaken  
**iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum** — to help, aid, assist  
    **adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtum** — to help, aid, assist  
**laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum** — to praise  
**satiō, satiāre, satiāvī, satiātum** — to satisfy, sate  
**servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum** — to preserve, keep safe, guard  
    **cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātum** — to preserve, keep safe  
**superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum** — to overcome, conquer; to be superior  
**vītō, vītāre, vītāvī, vītātum** — to avoid, shun  
**vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum** — to call, summon, invite

### second conjugation verbs

**habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum** — to have, hold, possess  
**maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūm** — to remain, stay  
    **remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, remānsūm** — to remain, stay behind  
**moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum** — to advise, warn  
**salveō, salvēre** — to be well, be in good health  
    **salve, salvēte** (*imperative*) — hello!  
**terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum** — to terrify, frighten  
**valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum** — to flourish; to be well, fare well  
    **vale, valēte** (*imperative*) — *good-bye!*  
**videō, vidēre, vidi, vīsum** — to see, look at

### nouns and other

**imperātor, -tōris, m.** — commander, general; the Emperor  
**enim** — for; for in fact; indeed, truly (postpositive)  
**ergō** — therefore

## The First Conjugation

The first conjugation is marked by the letter “a” throughout:

|                 |  |                            |
|-----------------|--|----------------------------|
| <b>laudāre</b>  | “to praise”                                    | <i>infinitive</i>          |
| <b>laudō</b>    | “I praise” or “I am praising”                  | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>laudās</b>   | “you praise” or “you are praising”             | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>laudat</b>   | “he/she/it praises” or “he/she/it is praising” | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>laudāmus</b> | “we praise” or “we are praising”               | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>laudātis</b> | “you (plural) praise” or “you are praising”    | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>laudant</b>  | “they praise” or “they are praising”           | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |
| <b>laudā</b>    | “praise!” (singular)                           | <i>singular imperative</i> |
| <b>laudāte</b>  | “praise!” (plural)                             | <i>plural imperative</i>   |

As you can see from the list of vocabulary above, the principal parts of the first conjugation are highly regular. Indeed, they are so regular that they are sometimes marked merely as (1) in your textbook.

The perfects need no special comment — their endings are exactly as you would expect, which are added to the third principal part.

### Put it into practice

Translate the following 1st conjugation verbs.

- |                       |                    |
|-----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <i>damus</i>       | 5. <i>iuvat</i>    |
| 2. <i>vocant</i>      | 6. they helped     |
| 3. <i>cōgitāvimus</i> | 7. he preserves    |
| 4. <i>dedērunt</i>    | 8. he is wandering |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## The Second Conjugation

The second conjugation is marked by a long  $\bar{e}$ . As you recall from the rules of accentuation, a long-vowel in the penultimate position is stressed. This will help you distinguish second conjugation verbs from the third.

- to teach** — *dīscere* (3rd conjugation)
- to have** — *habere* (2nd conjugation)
- to say** — *dīcere* (3rd conjugation)
- to stay** — *manere* (2nd conjugation)

The paradigm of the second conjugation is as follows:

|                |  |                            |
|----------------|--|----------------------------|
| <b>habēre</b>  | “to have”                                | <i>infinitive</i>          |
| <b>habēō</b>   | “I have” or “I am having”                | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>habēs</b>   | “you have” or “you are having”           | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>habet</b>   | “he/she/it has” or “he/she/it is having” | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>habēmus</b> | “we have” or “we are having”             | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>habētis</b> | “you (plural) have” or “you are having”  | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>habent</b>  | “they have” or “they are having”         | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |
| <b>habē</b>    | “have!” (singular)                       | <i>singular imperative</i> |
| <b>habēte</b>  | “have!” (plural)                         | <i>plural imperative</i>   |

Again, the perfects are completely regular: they add the perfect endings to the third principal part.

#### Put it into practice

Translate the following 1st conjugation verbs.

- |              |             |                      |
|--------------|-------------|----------------------|
| 9. vident    | 12. habuī   | 15. you (sg.) warned |
| 10. mansistī | 13. terret  | 16. he saw           |
| 11. manet    | 14. habēmus | 17. you terrify      |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## The Future of the Third Conjugation

The forms of the future tense are marked in the third conjugation by a change of vowel. Here are the forms of the future for the verb *regere*:

|                |                          |                            |
|----------------|--------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>regere</b>  | “to rule”                | <i>infinitive</i>          |
| <b>regam</b>   | “I shall rule”           | <i>1st person singular</i> |
| <b>regēs</b>   | “you will rule”          | <i>2nd person singular</i> |
| <b>reget</b>   | “he/she/it will rule”    | <i>3rd person singular</i> |
| <b>regēmus</b> | “we shall rule”          | <i>1st person plural</i>   |
| <b>regētis</b> | “you (plural) will rule” | <i>2nd person plural</i>   |
| <b>regent</b>  | “they will rule”         | <i>3rd person plural</i>   |

The important thing to note here is that the future endings of the third conjugation are mostly identical to the present endings of the second. This means that the ending *-ent* (etc.) on a second conjugation stem signifies the present tense; when it is on a third conjugation stem, it is a future. In order to successfully construe the tense of a verb, then, you need to know to which conjugation it belongs to.

#### Put it into practice

Translate the following 1st conjugation verbs.

- |             |             |                    |
|-------------|-------------|--------------------|
| 18. vīvētis | 21. habet   | 24. he terrifies   |
| 19. vidētis | 22. vīvēs   | 25. they will read |
| 20. discet  | 23. fallent | 26. they see       |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## The Future of 3rd Conjugation i-stem and 4th Conjugation

The endings of 4th conjugation verbs and 3rd conjugation with -i- are the same, but the “i” remains throughout.

|                 |                           |                 |                          |
|-----------------|---------------------------|-----------------|--------------------------|
| <b>capere</b>   | “to catch”                | <b>audire</b>   | “to hear”                |
| <b>capiam</b>   | “I shall catch”           | <b>audiam</b>   | “I shall hear”           |
| <b>capies</b>   | “you will catch”          | <b>audies</b>   | “you will hear”          |
| <b>capiet</b>   | “he/she/it will catch”    | <b>audiet</b>   | “he/she/it will hear”    |
| <b>capiemus</b> | “we shall catch”          | <b>audiemus</b> | “we shall hear”          |
| <b>capietis</b> | “you (plural) will catch” | <b>audietis</b> | “you (plural) will hear” |
| <b>capient</b>  | “they will catch”         | <b>audient</b>  | “they will hear”         |

### Put it into practice

Translate the following verbs of the 2nd, 3rd, and 4th conjugations.

- |              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| 27. facient  | 32. habet             |
| 28. videt    | 33. they will flee    |
| 29. gerētis  | 34. he remains        |
| 30. manēmus  | 35. they will capture |
| 31. scribent |                       |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Practice sentences

Translate the following sentences. (If there is a verb phrase in brackets, translate the sentence again replacing the relevant verb or verb phrase with the one in brackets.)

- uxorne mea sorōri tuae epistulam hodiē dat? (herī dedit)
- rēgem dē mōribus pessimōrum sine morā monēte! (monē!)
- terretne tē ira deōrum? dī enim facta hominum vident. (terruitne)  
(vidērunt)
- officium tuōs filiōs vocāvit. (vocat)
- optimōrum virōrum verba populum numquam fallent. (fefellērunt)
- vērā sine libertāte patria nōn valēre potest.
- bellum erit. ergō hōra ad arma nōs vocat.
- multī agricolae Rōmam iērunt, sed paucī ibi remanent.  
(remānsērunt)

9. bibere sine amicīs pessimum est. (fuit) (erit)
10. potuistine tuōs frātrēs adiuvāre?
11. magistrī puerōs monuērunt; sed puerī nōn didicērunt.
12. oculi mei nōn valuērunt; ergō perīcula nōn vīdēre potuī.
13. magister bellam filiam rēgis laudāvit sed filiōs eius culpāvit.
14. nihil populum terruit; optimī enim multa magna in patriā gessērunt.
15. ubi epistulam lēgisti? epistulam lēgī in portā. ibi enim puer mihi epistulam trādīdit.
16. The tyrant will capture the boys.
17. Men of wisdom love the best wines.
18. Will you do your duty, my friends?
19. Will your girlfriend write a letter to you?
20. I shall thank you (sg.), if you send gifts to me and my brothers.
21. Do you (sg.) speak your true opinions when you are among foolish (men)?

## Ancient readings

1. tē tua, mē dēlectant mea.  
     dēlectō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum — “delight; please”  
     Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes* 5.63
2. ubi vīta, ibi amor est; ubi amor, ibi sunt omnia; amā ergō, et fac quod vīs.  
     omnia — “all things; everything”  
     amā — (imperative)  
     quod vis — “what you wish”  
     Augustine



3. pecūnia nōn satiat avāritiam, sed irrītat.  
**avāritia, -ae, f.** — “greed; avarice”  
**irrītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** — (sounds like?)  
*Publilius Syrus*
4. sī nōn superās parva, quandō vincēs magna?  
*Thomas à Kempis, De Imitatione Christi 1.13.20*
5. sī sapientia Deus est, vērus philosophus est amātor Dei.  
**philosophus** — “philosopher”  
**amātor** — “lover”  
*St. Augustine De Civitate Dei 8.1*
6. hūmānum fuit errāre, sed diabolicum est per animōsitātem in errōre manēre.  
**diabolicus, -a, -um** — “devilish”  
**animōsitās, -ātis, f.** — “animosity; wrath”  
*Augustine, Sermones 164.14*
7. sum semperque fuī pauper, sed nōn obscūrus.  
**pauper** — (adj.) “poor”  
**obscūrus, -a, -um** — (sounds like?)  
*Martial, Epigrammata 5.13*
8. nōn semper errat fāma.  
*Tacitus, Agricola 9.8*
9. nōndum vēnit hōra mea.  
**nondum** — “not yet”  
*Vulgate, John 2.4*
10. nihil sine magnō vīta labōre dedit hominibus.  
**vīta** — *nominative*  
*Horace, Sermones 1.9.59-60*
11. rīdēre sine causā magnae signum stultitiae est.  
**rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsum** — *to laugh*  
*Proverb (Weinreiter, Sprichwörtern 73)*
12. sēcrētē amīcum monē, palam laudā.  
**sēcrētē** — “in secret; secretly”  
**palam** — “openly, publicly”  
*Publilius Syrus*

13. aberrāre ā fortūnā tuā nōn potes, obsidet tē.  
**aberrāre** = **ab-** + **errāre** — “wander way from”  
**obsideō, -ēre, -sēdī, -sessum** — “besiege”  
*Seneca, De Clementia 1.8.20*
14. ā bonīs discēs bona; et sī cum malis vivēs, mentem āmittēs.  
**mens, mentis, f.** — “mind”  
**āmittō, āmittere, āmīsī, āmissum** — “lose”  
*Theognis*
15. vīta mortuōrum in memoriā vīvit vīvōrum.  
**memoria, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)  
*Cicero, Philippica 9.10*
16. librum, sī malus est, nōn possum laudāre.  
*Juvenal, Saturae 3.41*
17. elephantōs porcīna vōx terret.  
**elephantus, -ī, m.** — (sounds like?)  
**porcīnus, -a, -um** — “of a pig”  
*Seneca, De Ira 2.11.5*
18. iūstītia est domina et rēgīna virtūtum.  
**iūstītia, -ae, f.** — “justice”  
*Cicero, De Officiis 3.28*
19. habent parvae commoda magna morae.  
**parvae** — (goes with **morae**)  
**commodum, -ī, n.** — “advantage, profit”  
*Ovid, Fasti 3.394*
20. stultus est qui spem ponit in hominibus aut in creaturis.  
**stultus est qui** — “foolish is he who...”  
**spem** — “hope” (accusative)  
*Thomas à Kempis, De Imitatione Christi 3.6.11*

### Legal maxim #17

dē minimīs nōn cūrat lēx.

**cūrō, cūrāre** — “to care about, to be concerned with”

*Legal maxim asserting that the law only concerns itself with important matters.*

**Legal maxim #18**

*lēgēs nōn valent ultrā territōrium.*

**ultrā** — (*prep. w. accusative*) “beyond”

**territōrium** — (*sounds like?*)

*Legal principle limiting the scope of law geographically.*

**A letter to recover lost property**

Mārcus Cicerō salūtem dicit Publīō Sulpiciō, Imperātōri:

Dionysius, servus meus, fūgit. is est in prōvinciā tuā: eum Marcus Bolanus, vir bonus et meus amicus, et multī aliī ibi vīdērunt. sī potes eum ad mē remittere, grātiās tibi agam.

**salūs, salūtis, f.** — “good health” (a greeting)

**multī aliī** — “many others”

**sī potest** — “if it is possible”

**remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum** — “to send back”

*Cicero, Epistulae ad Familiares, 13.77. Written at Rome, August, 45 BC.*

**Augustine on the vine and branches (Augustine, Sermones 87)**

Dominus dicit in ēvangeliō: “ego sum vītis, vōs estis sarmenta, pater meus est agricola.” quid facit agricola? interrogō vōs quī agricolae estis; quid facit agricola? agrum colit. sī ergō pater deus agricola est, habet agrum, et colit agrum, et exspectat ex eō fructum.

**in ēvangeliō** — “in the gospel”

**vītis, -is, f.** — “vine”

**sarmentum, -ī, n.** — “branch”

**interrogō** — “I ask”

**vōs quī** — “you (pl.) who”

**ex eō** — “from it”

**fructum** — “fruit”

**colō, colere, coluī, cultum** — “cultivate”

**exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** — “to await for; expect”



8a

---

THE IMPERFECT TENSE

THE FUTURE TENSE

## Vocabulary to learn

### nouns

---

**animus**, -ī, **m.** — mind, soul

**animī**, -ōrum, **m. pl.** — high spirits; courage

**cōsiliū**, -iī, **n.** — plan, purpose; advice, counsel; judgement

**culpa**, -ae, **f.** — guilt, fault; blame

**cūra**, -ae, **f.** — care, caution; a charge, task

**glōria**, -ae, **f.** — glory, fame, praise

**liberī**, -ōrum, **m.** (*plural*) — children

**philosophia**, -ae, **f.** — philosophy

**vitium**, -iī, **n.** — fault; crime, vice

### adjectives and other

---

**beātus**, -a, -um — blessed, happy

**clārus**, -a, -um — clear, bright; famous, illustrious

**liber**, **libera**, **liberum** — free

**longus**, **longa**, **longum** — long

**nec** — and not

**neque** — and not

**novus**, -a, -um — new

**perpetuus**, -a, -um — perpetual, lasting, continuous

**plēnus**, -a, -um — full; (*with the genitive or ablative*) full of, filled with

» **plēnus vīnī vir** = “a man full of wine”

» **plēnum puerīs gymnasium** = “a gymnasium filled with boys”

**proximus**, -a, -um — very near, next (to), nearest

**pulcher**, **pulchra**, **pulchrum** — beautiful, handsome

**salvus**, -a, -um — safe, sound

**sānus**, -a, -um — sound, healthy, sane

## The Imperfect Tense

You already know the perfect tense as the tense of completed action. It can be translated with either the English simple past (**ēgi** = “I did”) or the perfect (“I have done”). The imperfect, by contrast, refers to incompleted action in the past, and is translated with the English continual past “I was doing” or the habitual past “I used to do”.

|                                |                   |                    |                      |                    |                  |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|--------------------|----------------------|--------------------|------------------|
| <i>I was loving<br/>(etc.)</i> | <i>... seeing</i> | <i>... reading</i> | <i>... capturing</i> | <i>... hearing</i> | <i>... going</i> |
| <b>amābam</b>                  | <b>vidēbam</b>    | <b>legēbam</b>     | <b>capiēbam</b>      | <b>audiēbam</b>    | <b>ībam</b>      |
| <b>amābās</b>                  | <b>vidēbās</b>    | <b>legēbās</b>     | <b>capiēbās</b>      | <b>audiēbās</b>    | <b>ībās</b>      |
| <b>amābat</b>                  | <b>vidēbat</b>    | <b>legēbat</b>     | <b>capiēbat</b>      | <b>audiēbat</b>    | <b>ibat</b>      |
| <b>amābāmus</b>                | <b>vidēbāmus</b>  | <b>legēbāmus</b>   | <b>capiēbāmus</b>    | <b>audiēbāmus</b>  | <b>ībāmus</b>    |
| <b>amābātis</b>                | <b>vidēbātis</b>  | <b>legēbātis</b>   | <b>capiēbātis</b>    | <b>audiēbātis</b>  | <b>ībātis</b>    |
| <b>amābant</b>                 | <b>vidēbant</b>   | <b>legēbant</b>    | <b>capiēbant</b>     | <b>audiēbant</b>   | <b>ībant</b>     |

The endings, as you will notice, are identical for all conjugations, but are preceded by the characteristic vowel of each conjugation.

### Put it into practice

Translate the following verbs.

- |               |                            |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| 1. terrēbāmus | 7. they were seeing        |
| 2. habēbās    | 8. you (sg.) were thinking |
| 3. vocābam    | 9. you (sg.) were staying  |
| 4. laudābant  | 10. I was staying          |
| 5. dabāmus    | 11. we were helping        |
| 6. culpābant  | 12. he/she/it was sending  |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Imperfect of esse and posse

The imperfects of **esse** (“to be”) and **posse** (“to be able”) have the following forms:

|               |                       |                  |                            |
|---------------|-----------------------|------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>eram</b>   | <i>I was</i>          | <b>poteram</b>   | <i>I was able</i>          |
| <b>erās</b>   | <i>you (sg.) were</i> | <b>poterās</b>   | <i>you (sg.) were able</i> |
| <b>erat</b>   | <i>he was</i>         | <b>poterat</b>   | <i>he was able</i>         |
| <b>erāmus</b> | <i>we were</i>        | <b>poterāmus</b> | <i>we were able</i>        |
| <b>erātis</b> | <i>you (pl.) were</i> | <b>poterātis</b> | <i>you (pl.) were able</i> |
| <b>erant</b>  | <i>they were</i>      | <b>poterant</b>  | <i>they were able</i>      |

You have already learned the future of the verbs **esse** and **posse** in Chapter 4.

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following verbs

- |               |                    |                         |
|---------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| 13. poterāmus | 17. poterant       | 21. I was able          |
| 14. erāmus    | 18. erant          | 22. you (pl.) were able |
| 15. poterās   | 19. he was able    | 23. you (sg.) were      |
| 16. erat      | 20. you (pl.) were | 24. I was               |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## The Future Conjugations

In Chapter 7, you learned the future tense for the third and fourth conjugations. The future of the first and second conjugation has the endings **-bō, -bis, -bit, -bimus, -bitis, -bunt**.

| <i>I shall love (etc.)</i> | <i>... see</i>   | <i>... read</i> | <i>... capture</i> | <i>... hear</i> | <i>... go</i> |
|----------------------------|------------------|-----------------|--------------------|-----------------|---------------|
| <u>amābō</u>               | <u>vidēbō</u>    | <u>legam</u>    | <u>capiam</u>      | <u>audiam</u>   | <u>ībō</u>    |
| <u>amābis</u>              | <u>vidēbis</u>   | <u>legēs</u>    | <u>capies</u>      | <u>audiēs</u>   | <u>ibis</u>   |
| <u>amābit</u>              | <u>vidēbit</u>   | <u>leget</u>    | <u>capiet</u>      | <u>audiet</u>   | <u>ibit</u>   |
| <u>amābimus</u>            | <u>vidēbimus</u> | <u>legēmus</u>  | <u>capiemus</u>    | <u>audiēmus</u> | <u>ibimus</u> |
| <u>amābitis</u>            | <u>vidēbitis</u> | <u>legētis</u>  | <u>capietis</u>    | <u>audiētis</u> | <u>ibitis</u> |
| <u>amābunt</u>             | <u>vidēbunt</u>  | <u>legent</u>   | <u>capient</u>     | <u>audient</u>  | <u>ibunt</u>  |

**Put it into practice**

Parse the following verbs.

- |              |               |               |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 25. erunt    | 29. mittet    | 33. monēs     |
| 26. gerētis  | 30. manēbō    | 34. terrēs    |
| 27. capiēmus | 31. manētis   | 35. poterimus |
| 28. ducent   | 32. veniēbant | 36. audiētis  |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.



## Practice Sentences

1. poëtae Rōmānī carmina antiq̄uīs dē mōribus Graecōrum saepe scribēbant. sed Graecī carmina Rōmāna numquam legērunt.
2. propter mōrēs imperātōris nostrā in patriā sine cūrā remanēre possumus. maximōs enim animōs et sapientiam optimam habet.
3. paucī sine vitiīs sunt; sed bonī pauca minimaque habent.
4. tyrannus virōs nostrōs superāre nōn poterat nec imperātōrem nostrum fallere poterit.
5. nōn potest dare sententiās sine verbīs, neque verba sine sententiīs.
6. dī verba nostra audiunt videntque facta.
7. scrīptōrēs Rōmānī populum saepe terrēbant. maximīs enim dē perīculīs scrīpsērunt.
8. Caesar maximus Rōmānōrum imperātor fuit. multōs enim populōs terrāsque vīcit.
9. multam pecūniam numquam habēbo, sed semper beātus erō.
10. They were not able to avoid the blame on account of the destruction of the temple.
11. A man will learn many good things if he reads good books.

## Ancient Readings

1. bene valē! apud Orcum tē vidēbō!  
**apud Orcum** — “at the house of Hades”  
*Plautus, Asinaria 606*
2. virtūs est vitium fugere.  
*Horace, Epistulae 1.1.41*
3. cīvitas in sēditiōne nōn potest esse beāta.  
**sēditiō, -tiōnis, f.** — “civil discord, dissension, sedition”  
*Cicero, De Finibus 1.58*
4. oculōs habent et nōn vidēbunt; aurēs habent et nōn audient.  
**auris, auris, f.** — “ears”  
*Vulgate, Psalm 113: 13-14*
5. longa est vīta, sī plēna est.  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 93.2*
6. ait praetor: sī nōn habēbunt advocātum, egō dabō.  
**ait praetor** — “the praetor says”  
**advocātus, -ī, m.** — “an advocate; a lawyer”  
*Ulpian, Digesta 3.1.1.4*
7. Cicero vīvit, vīvetque per omnium saeculōrum memoriā.  
**memoria, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)  
**omnium saeculōrum** — “of all ages” (genitive)  
*Velleius Paterculus, Historia Romana 2.66.5*
8. fīlius nōn portābit inīquitātem patris, et pater nōn portābit  
inīquitātem filiī.  
**inīquitas, -tātis, f.** — “iniquity, sinfulness”  
**portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** — carry  
*Vulgate, Ezekiel 18.20*
9. nōn census nec clārū nomen sed probitās magnōs ingeniumque  
facit.  
**census** — “census qualification, net worth”  
**probitās, probitātis, f.** — honesty, uprightness  
**ingenium, -iī, n.** — “talent”  
*Ovid, Ex Ponto 1.9.39*

10. sum fēlix (quis enim negābit hoc?) fēlixque manēbō.

**fēlix** — “lucky” (nominative singular)

**quis** — “who...?”

**negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** — “to deny”

*Ovid, Metamorphoses 6.193*

11. nūllum firmum in Graecīs hominibus cōsiliū est.

**firmus, -a, -um** — “firm, strong; reliable”

**nūllus, -a, -um** — “no, none, not any”

*Cicero, Pro Flacco 36*

12. cognōscētis vērītātem, et vērītās liberābit vōs.

**cognoscō, -ere** — “know, recognize”

**vōs** — “you” (pl. acc.)

*Vulgate (John 8:32)*

13. lex semper dabit remedium.

**remedium, -iī, n.** — “a remedy” (9)

*Juristic maxim*

14. quis est homo, quī vivet et nōn vidēbit mortem?

**quis** — “who...?”

**quī** — “who”

**mors, mortis, f.** — “death” (12)

*Vulgate, Psalms 88.49*

### Legal Maxim #19

malō animō

*Legal phrase referring to criminal intent.*

### Legal maxim #20

ubi nōn est culpa, nōn est poena.

*Legal principle stating that there is only a penalty where fault can be determined.*

### Legal Maxim #21 <<<move to 8b>>

aqua currit et dēbet currere, ut currere solēbat.

**ut** — “just as”

*Legal principle that holds that a running stream should be left to flow in its natural channel.*

**Legal maxim #22 <<move to 8b>>**

---

rēx dēbet esse sub lēge, quia lēx facit rēgem.

**sub** — (*prep + abl*) “under”

**quia** — “because”

*Legal principle establishing the relationship between the law and the king.*

**Varro on the words *agere*, *facere*, and *gerere***

---

propter similitūdinem verbōrum multī errant. potest enim aliquid facere et nōn agere, ut poēta facit carmen et nōn agit, contrā actor agit et nōn facit, et imperātor neque facit neque agit, sed bellum gerit.

**similitūdo, -tūdinis, f.** — “similarity”

**aliquid** — “something”

**ut** — “just as; as”

**contrā** (adv.) — “on the other hand; by contrast”

*Varro, De Lingua Latina, 6. 77 (adapted)*

8b

---

VERBS THAT TAKE INFINITIVES

## Vocabulary to Learn

### verbs

---

**audeō, audēre, ausus sum\*** — to dare

\* **audēre** forms its perfects in a compound that includes a form of the verb 'to be': *ausus est* = "he dared", *ausa est* = "she dared", *ausi sunt* = "they dared", etc.

**cupiō, cupere, cupivī, cupitum** — to desire

**dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum** — to owe; ought, must

**dēsino, -ere, -sivī, -situm** — to cease, stop

**doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum** — to teach; tell, show

**incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum** — to begin

**soleō, solēre, solitus sum\*** — to be accustomed

\* like **audēre**, **solēre** forms its perfects in a compound: *solitus est* = "he was accustomed", etc.

**temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum** — to attempt, try

**tolerō, tolerāre, tolerāvī, tolerātum** — to endure, bear, tolerate

### other

---

**aut ... aut** — either ... or

**et ... et** — both ... and

**autem** — (*postpositive*) however; moreover, furthermore, indeed

**igitur** — (*postpositive*) therefore

**neque ... neque** — neither ... nor

**nec ... nec** — neither ... nor

## Verbs That Take the Infinitive

You have already learned the verb **posse** (“to be able”) and have seen it used with *complementary infinitives* that complete its meaning:

- ☞ **videre possum** — “I am able to see” or “I can see”
- ☞ **iuvare potuimus** — “we were able to help” or “we could help”

There are other Latin verbs that take complementary infinitives. Many of them are easy to translate into English, because we use similar constructions. Thus **dēbere** (which means “ought” or “must” when it is accompanied by an infinitive) and **audere** (“dare to”):

- ☞ **culpāre dēbēs** — “you ought to blame” or “you must blame” or “you have to blame”
- ☞ **dare dēbēmus** — “we ought to give” or “we must give” or “we have to give”
- ☞ **dīcere audent** — “they dare to speak”

Some examples of other verbs that can use an infinitive to complete its meaning:

- ☞ **dīcere incēpit** — “he began to speak”
- ☞ **ire habuit in animō** — “he had in mind to go” or “he intended to go”
- ☞ **legere scribereque didici** — “I learned to read and write”
- ☞ **bibere solent** — “they are accustomed to drink”

### Put it into practice

Translate the following:

- |                             |                                     |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. crās id facere incipiam. | 4. audēbuntne vērītātem dicere?     |
| 2. ibi remanēre cupiēbat.   | 5. nostrōs amīcōs adiuvāre solēmus. |
| 3. superāre eum dēbēbis.    |                                     |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## The infinitive as a noun

Infinitives are verbal nouns, neuter in gender, and in the above examples they are effectively the direct objects of the verbs that govern them. Infinitives can also be the subject of a verb, for example:

- ☞ **hūmānum est errāre.**  
— “To err is human.”
- ☞ **virtūtēs discere vitia dediscere est.**  
— “To learn virtues is to unlearn vices” (Seneca, *Epistulae Morales* 50.7)

In a sentence like **hūmānum est errāre**, the adjective **hūmānum** is neuter because infinitives are all neuter.

### Put it into practice

Translate the following:

- |                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 6. docēre est beātum   | 9. fallere amīcōs est pessimum |
| 7. amāre est maximum   | 10. laudāre stulōs est stultum |
| 8. incipere est prīmum |                                |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Post-Positive Particles

Latin has a number of words that are *postpositive*. Some of them you know and some are in this chapter, such as **autem**, **enim**, and **igitur**. They are called *postpositive* because they are placed (or “positioned”) after (“post”) the first word of a sentence.

The function of these words is often not so much to convey a specific meaning, but to help define the relationships between sentences and clauses:

- ☞ **autem** — often offers an antithetical or contrasting thought from what went previously and can be translated “however; on the contrary”; sometimes, it is resumptive and means “moreover”;
- ☞ **enim** — is used to corroborate, confirm, or explain the assertion of the preceding sentence and can be translated “for; for indeed; etc.”;
- ☞ **igitur** — “therefore” is used for statements that have their reasons given in the preceding sentence.

### Put it into practice

Translate the following verbs:

- |              |               |               |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|
| 11. erunt    | 15. mittet    | 19. monēs     |
| 12. gerētis  | 16. manēbō    | 20. terrēs    |
| 13. capiēmus | 17. manētis   | 21. poterimus |
| 14. ducent   | 18. veniēbant | 22. audiētis  |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Neque; nec; et ... et; aut ... aut

The conjunction **neque** (which can also be spelled **nec**) is a negative conjunction, and is commonly used as the equivalent of **et nōn**.

- ☞ **rēx bellum gerit nec dē perīculis cōgitat.** —  
“The king is waging war and does not think about the dangers.”

Latin commonly repeats **neque** to express “neither ... nor”:

- ☞ **nec filiis nec filiabus pecūniam dedit.** —  
“He gave money to neither (his) sons nor (his) daughters.”
- ☞ **mors nec bonum nec malum est.** —  
“Death is neither a good thing nor a bad thing.” (Seneca, *Ad Marciam* 19.5)

This is parallel to **et ... et** as “both ... and”:

- ☞ **et aquam et vinum bibimus.** — “We drink both water and wine.”



## Practice Sentences

1. novās sententiās discere numquam desinere dēbēmus. bonī enim vērītātem in novīs saepe inveniēnt.
2. mātṛī vestrae gratiās agere nōn potuī. frāter enim meus verba plēna irae dīcere incēpit.
3. līberī Rōmānī Graecōs librōs legere solēbant. Graecī autem numquam legērunt Rōmānōs .  
     **līberī** — (is this ‘free’ or ‘children?’)
4. sānō cum cōsiliō rēx regere dēbet. sānum enim consilium ad gloriā ducet.
5. bonus homo ibi remanere cupiet ubi eum honor dūxit.
6. nōs arma malōrum terruērunt. ergō nostrī fugere incēpērunt.
7. populus pacem facere semper temptāre dēbēt. libertās enim nōs ad pacem vocat.
8. sī vidēre frātre tuum in animō habēs\*, domum redīre sine morā dēbēs.  
     \**in animō habēre* — “to have in mind”
9. poēta multam sapientiam semper habēbat. ergō dē verbīs eius cōgitāre dēbētis.
10. tyrannus pecūniam ab templis capere incēpit et virōs ibi interficere. avārus enim et malus fuit.
11. meī filiū novōs labōrēs cūrāsque numquam tolerāre poterant. semper enim cēnāre bibereque solēbant.
12. The smallest dangers were beginning to frighten me.
13. I dare to hear neither the words of your (pl.) sister nor the opinions of your brother.
14. We are accustomed to be full of anger when the people do not praise our Emperor.
15. A good teacher must either teach the truth or say nothing.

## Ancient Readings

1. nec vīta nec fortūna hominibus perpetua est.  
*Publilius Syrus*
2. dum docēmus, discimus.  
*Varro, De Lingua Latina 6.7*
3. hominēs dum docent discunt.  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales, 7. 8*
4. vīxī quemadmodum volūi; quārē mortuus sum, nesciō.  
**quemadmodum** — “*how, in what manner*”  
**nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum** — “*not know, be ignorant of*” (16)  
*Funerary inscription (CIL 2.6130)*
5. et vēritātem amāmus et Platōnem, sed melius est amāre vēritātem.  
**melius est** — “*it is better*”  
*Philosophical maxim*
6. dum nōs fata sinunt, oculōs satiāre dēbēmus amōre.  
**fatum, ī, n.** — “*fate*”  
**sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm** — “*allow*”  
*Propertius, Elegiae 2.15.23*
7. omnēs hominēs aut liberī sunt aut servī.  
**omnēs** — “*all*” (nominative plural)  
*Digesta 1.5.3*
8. beātus est quī vivit ut vult.  
**quī** — “*he who*”  
**ut** — “*as*”  
*Thomas Aquinas, Super Evangelium S. Matthaei 5.2*
9. mater timidī flēre nōn solet.  
**timidus, -a, -um** — “*fearful, cowardly, trembling, timid*”  
**fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum** — “*weep*”  
*Cornelius Nepos, Thrasybulus 2.3*

10. in civitate liberā lingua mēnsque liberae esse dēbent.

**lingua mēnsque** — (note that two singular nouns, together, will take a plural adjective)

**lingua, -ae, f.** — “the tongue; utterance, speech, language”

**mēns, mentis, f.** — “the mind, thought”

*Suetonius, Tiberius 3.28*

11. senatus et populus Romanus beneficii et iniuriae memor esse solet.

**beneficium, -iī, n.** — “a favour, a benefit”

**iniuria, -ae, f.** — “a harm, an injury”

**memor esse** — “to be mindful of, to remember”

*Sallust, Bellum Iugurthinum 104*

12. cattus amat piscēs, sed nōn cupit tangere aquam.

**cattus, -ī, m.** — “cat”

**piscis, -is, f.** — “fish”

*Proverb (Binder, Thesaurus 456)*

13. quī bene vīvit, bene docet, et quī bene docet, Deī nuntius est.

**quī** — “he who...”

**nuntius** — “a messenger”

*Thomas à Kempis, Hortulus Rosarum 6*

14. spēs famae solet ad virtūtem impellere multōs.

**spēs famae** — “hope (nom.) of fame”

**impellō, -ere** — *impel, push towards*

*Palingenius, Zodiacus Vitae, Aries 11*

15. lex nōn debet habēre unam syllabam vacuam.

**unus, -a, -um** — one (9)

**syllaba, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)

**vacuus, -a, -um** — *empty* (14)

*Charles Cahier, Quelque Six Mille Proverbes 1564*

16. signum scientiae est posse docēre.

**scientia, -ae, f.** — *knowledge; science*

*Thomas Aquinas, Sententia libri Ethicorum 6.3.6*

17. amīcī vitia sī tolerās, facis tua.

*Publilius Syrus*

**Legal maxim #23**

---

mātrimōnia debent esse libera.

mātrimōnium, -iī, n. — (*sounds like?*)

*Invoking the legal principle that marriage should be entered freely by both parties.*

**Legal maxim #24**

---

furiōsus neque emere neque vendere potest.

furiōsus, -a, -um — “insane, crazy”

emō, emere, ēmī, emptum — “buy”

vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditum — “sell”

*Legal principal requiring mental capacity in order for one’s acts to be legally valid.*

# 9

---

DEMONSTRATIVES

ADJECTIVES WITH GENITIVES IN -IUS

## Vocabulary to learn

### demonstratives

---

**hīc, haec, hōc** (*gen. huius*) — this, these; he, she, it, they

**ille, illa, illud** (*gen. illius*) — that, those (of his); he, she, it, they

**iste, ista, istud** (*gen. istius*) — that, those (of yours) (sometimes used contemptuously)

### adjectives

---

**alius, alia, aliud** (*gen. alterius*) — other, another; different

**alii ... alii** — some ... others

**aliud ... aliud** — one thing ... another

**alter, altera, alterum** (*gen. alterius*) — the other (of two)

**neuter, -tra, -trum** (*gen. neutrius*) — neither (of two)

**nūllus, -a, -um** (*gen. nūllius*) — no, not any; none

**nōnnūllus, -a, -um** (*gen. nōnnūllius*) — some (lit. not none)

**sōlus, -a, -um** (*gen. sōlius*) — alone, only; the only

**nōn solum ... sed etiam** — not only, but also

**tōtus, -a, -um** (*gen. tōtius*) — whole, entire

**ūllus, -a, -um** (*gen. ūllius*) — any

**ūnus, -a, -um** (*gen. ūnīus*) — one, single, alone

**uter, -tra, -trum** (*gen. utrius*) — which (of two)...?, either

### nouns

---

**cōpia, cōpiae, f.** — abundance, supply

**cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.** — supplies; troops, forces

**discipula, -ae, f.** — pupil, student (female)

**discipulus, -ī, m.** — pupil, student (male)

**locus, -ī, m.** — a place; a passage (in a book)

**loca, -ōrum, n. pl.** — places

**locī, -ōrum, m. pl.** — passages in literature

**medicus, medicī, m.** — doctor, physician

**morbis, -ī, m.** — sickness, disease

**ratio, ratiōnis, f.** — method, plan; reason; system; calculation, account

**remedium, remediī, n.** — remedy, cure

**voluptās, voluptātis, f.** — pleasure

### verbs

---

**necō, necāre, necāvī, necātum** — to kill, slay, murder

**trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum** — to drag, draw; get, obtain, derive; attract

### other

---

**ante** — (prep. + acc.) before

**quārē** — because of which; wherefore; why

**quoniam** — (conjunction) since, inasmuch as, because

**tamen** — (adv., postpositive) nevertheless, still

**post** — (prep. + acc.) after, behind

## Demonstratives

Demonstratives (from **demonstrāre**, “to show”) can be either pronouns or adjectives and function to designate what a speaker or writer is pointing to. They function much like “this/these” and “that/those” in English.

Here is the paradigm for the pronoun **hīc, haec, hōc** (“this/these (of mine)”). Note, especially, the genitive and dative singular. Because the basic pattern here is typified in the Latin pronouns, we refer to this as the pronomial declension:

|      | singular     |              |              | plural       |              |              |
|------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
|      | masc.        | fem.         | neut.        | masc.        | fem.         | neut.        |
| nom. | <b>hīc</b>   | <b>haec</b>  | <b>hōc</b>   | <b>hī</b>    | <b>hae</b>   | <b>haec</b>  |
| gen. | <b>huius</b> | <b>huius</b> | <b>huius</b> | <b>hōrum</b> | <b>hārum</b> | <b>hōrum</b> |
| dat. | <b>huic</b>  | <b>huic</b>  | <b>huic</b>  | <b>hīs</b>   | <b>hīs</b>   | <b>hīs</b>   |
| acc. | <b>hunc</b>  | <b>hanc</b>  | <b>hōc</b>   | <b>hōs</b>   | <b>hās</b>   | <b>haec</b>  |
| abl. | <b>hōc</b>   | <b>hāc</b>   | <b>hōc</b>   | <b>hīs</b>   | <b>hīs</b>   | <b>hīs</b>   |

The pronoun “that/those (of his)” has similar endings in the genitive and dative singulars:

|      | singular      |               |                     | plural         |                |                |
|------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
|      | masc.         | fem.          | neut.               | masc.          | fem.           | neut.          |
| nom. | <b>ille</b>   | <b>illa</b>   | <b>ill<u>u</u>d</b> | <b>illī</b>    | <b>illae</b>   | <b>illa</b>    |
| gen. | <b>illius</b> | <b>illius</b> | <b>illius</b>       | <b>illōrum</b> | <b>illārum</b> | <b>illōrum</b> |
| dat. | <b>illī</b>   | <b>illī</b>   | <b>illī</b>         | <b>illis</b>   | <b>illis</b>   | <b>illis</b>   |
| acc. | <b>illum</b>  | <b>illam</b>  | <b>ill<u>u</u>d</b> | <b>illōs</b>   | <b>illās</b>   | <b>illa</b>    |
| abl. | <b>illō</b>   | <b>illā</b>   | <b>illō</b>         | <b>illis</b>   | <b>illis</b>   | <b>illis</b>   |

Note, too, the neuter singular nominative and accusative have forms that are slightly irregular.

Finally, the pronoun “that/those (of yours)”, which designates a “that” belonging to an addressee:

|      | singular      |               |                     | plural         |                |                |
|------|---------------|---------------|---------------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
|      | masc.         | fem.          | neut.               | masc.          | fem.           | neut.          |
| nom. | <b>iste</b>   | <b>ista</b>   | <b>ist<u>u</u>d</b> | <b>istī</b>    | <b>istae</b>   | <b>ista</b>    |
| gen. | <b>istius</b> | <b>istius</b> | <b>istius</b>       | <b>istōrum</b> | <b>istārum</b> | <b>istōrum</b> |
| dat. | <b>istī</b>   | <b>istī</b>   | <b>istī</b>         | <b>istīs</b>   | <b>istīs</b>   | <b>istīs</b>   |
| acc. | <b>istum</b>  | <b>istam</b>  | <b>ist<u>u</u>d</b> | <b>istōs</b>   | <b>istās</b>   | <b>ista</b>    |
| abl. | <b>istō</b>   | <b>istā</b>   | <b>istō</b>         | <b>istīs</b>   | <b>istīs</b>   | <b>istīs</b>   |

The point of the demonstratives is to designate nouns that are either near the speaker (**hic vir** — “this man”), near the addressee (**iste amicus** — “that friend (of yours)”), or distant from both (**illud dōnum** — “that gift over there, that gift of his”). The demonstrative **iste** is sometimes used contemptuously.

Here are some examples:

|   |   |  |
|---|---|--|
| <b>hic amicus</b><br>— “this friend”                | <b>illa aqua</b><br>— “that water”                  | <b>istud dōnum</b><br>— “that gift”                |
| <b>huius amīcī</b><br>— “of this friend”            | <b>illius aquae</b><br>— “of that water”            | <b>istius dōnī</b><br>— “of that gift”             |
| <b>huic amīcō</b><br>— “to/for this friend”         | <b>illī aquae</b><br>— “to/for that water”          | <b>istī dōnō</b><br>— “to/for that gift”           |
| <b>hunc amīcum</b><br>— “this friend”               | <b>illam aquam</b><br>— “that water”                | <b>istud dōnum</b><br>— “that gift”                |
| <b>hōc amīcō</b><br>— “by/with this friend”         | <b>illā aquā</b><br>— “by/with that water”          | <b>istō dōnō</b><br>— “by/with that gift”          |
| <b>hī amīcī</b><br>— “these friends”                | <b>illae aquae</b><br>— “those waters”              | <b>ista dōna</b><br>— “those gifts”                |
| <b>hōrum amīcōrum</b><br>— “of these friends”       | <b>illārum aquārum</b><br>— “of those waters”       | <b>istōrum dōnōrum</b><br>— “of those gifts”       |
| <b>hīs amīcīs</b><br>— “to/for these friends”       | <b>illīs aquīs</b><br>— “to/for those waters”       | <b>istīs dōnīs</b><br>— “to/for those gifts”       |
| <b>hōs amīcōs</b><br>— “these friends”              | <b>illās aquās</b><br>— “those waters”              | <b>ista dōna</b><br>— “those gifts”                |
| <b>hīs amīcīs</b><br>— “by/with/from these friends” | <b>illīs aquīs</b><br>— “by/with/from those waters” | <b>istīs dōnīs</b><br>— “by/with/from those gifts” |

The forms are not particularly challenging. Special attention, however, needs to be paid to the genitive (**huius, illius, istius**) and dative singular (**huic, illī, istī**).

#### Put it into practice

Translate the following prepositional phrases in which the demonstratives are being used demonstratively:

- |                          |                         |
|--------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. sine hīs lēgibus      | 7. ab illō tempore      |
| 2. propter illum labōrem | 8. out of those temples |
| 3. ante illud tempus     | 9. before that delay    |
| 4. per hās virtūtēs      | 10. with this love      |
| 5. cum hīs carminibus    | 11. with those songs    |
| 6. sine illō lēge        | 12. in these fears      |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

#### Substantive use of demonstratives

Like any adjective, demonstratives are commonly used as substantives.

- ⇒ **hic** — “this (man)”
- ⇒ **illa** — “that (woman)”
- ⇒ **istud** — “that (thing)”
- ⇒ **hī** — “these (men)”
- ⇒ **haec** — “these (things)”



Both **ille** and **hic** are often used much like English uses “the former” and “the latter” when referring to people and things already mentioned in a sentence. Here, **hic** refers to “the latter” and **ille** to “the former”.

### Put it into practice

Translate the following prepositional phrases in which the demonstratives are being used substantively.

- |                 |                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| 13. inter haec  | 19. propter haec                    |
| 14. ex hōc      | 20. ab illis                        |
| 15. sine hīs    | 21. on account of that (thing)      |
| 16. propter hōc | 22. on account of that man’s virtue |
| 17. cum hīs     | 23. with the songs of those (men)   |
| 18. ex illis    | 24. with the body of that (man)     |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Adjectives with Pronominal Endings (-ius)

A group of nine adjectives have special endings in the dative and genitive. These are very common, so that they are worth paying special attention to. The genitives and datives are similar to those of the demonstratives **ille** and **hic** that you have just learned: their genitives end in **-ius** and their datives **-ī**. Here is the paradigm for the adjective **sōlus**, **-a**, **-um** (“alone, only”).

|                   | <i>masculine</i> | <i>feminine</i> | <i>neuter</i>  |
|-------------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| <i>nom. sing.</i> | <b>sōlus</b>     | <b>sōla</b>     | <b>sōlum</b>   |
| <i>gen. sing.</i> | <b>sōlius</b>    | <b>sōlius</b>   | <b>sōlius</b>  |
| <i>dat. sing.</i> | <b>sōlī</b>      | <b>sōlī</b>     | <b>sōlī</b>    |
| <i>acc. sing.</i> | <b>sōlum</b>     | <b>sōlam</b>    | <b>sōlum</b>   |
| <i>abl. sing.</i> | <b>sōlō</b>      | <b>sōlā</b>     | <b>sōlō</b>    |
| <i>voc. sing.</i> | <b>sōle</b>      | <b>sōla</b>     | <b>sōlum</b>   |
| <i>nom. plur.</i> | <b>sōli</b>      | <b>sōlae</b>    | <b>sōla</b>    |
| <i>gen. plur.</i> | <b>sōlōrum</b>   | <b>sōlārum</b>  | <b>sōlōrum</b> |
| <i>dat. plur.</i> | <b>sōlis</b>     | <b>sōlis</b>    | <b>sōlis</b>   |
| <i>acc. plur.</i> | <b>sōlōs</b>     | <b>sōlās</b>    | <b>sōla</b>    |
| <i>abl. plur.</i> | <b>sōlis</b>     | <b>sōlis</b>    | <b>sōlis</b>   |
| <i>voc. plur.</i> | <b>sōli</b>      | <b>sōlae</b>    | <b>sōla</b>    |

As you can see, apart from the singular genitive (**sōlius**) and singular dative (**sōlī**), the forms are just like any adjective of the first and second declension.

The most common of these, **alius**, **alia**, **aliud** (“other, another”) has two other irregularities: its neuter singular is **aliud** (cf. **illud** and **istud**) and its genitive singular is **alterius** (from **alter**).

The list of adjectives that use these endings is not long and can be remembered through the handy mnemonic **ūnus nauta**:

- ūnus**, -a, -um (gen. **ūnīus**) — one, single, alone
- nūllus**, -a, -um (gen. **nūllīus**) — no, not any; none
- ūllus**, -a, -um (gen. **ūllīus**) — any
- sōlus**, -a, -um (gen. **sōlius**) — alone, only; the only
- neuter**, -tra, -trum (gen. **neutrius**) — neither (of two)
- alius**, alia, aliud (gen. **alterius**) — other, another; different
- uter**, -tra, -trum (gen. **utrius**) — which (of two)...?, either
- tōtus**, -a, -um (gen. **tōtīus**) — whole, entire
- alter**, altera, alterum (gen. **alterius**) — the other (of two)

## Practice Sentences

1. medicus dē morbīs virginum saepe cōgitābat. ille igitur librum dē remediīs hōrum scrīpsit.
2. sententiās vērās habēbō, si vītā meam ratiō reget. haec enim hominibus sapientiam semper trādit.
3. illa carmina maximā cum voluptāte legimus. verba enim illīus scrīptōris plēna sunt sapientiae.
4. “uter puer est vester filius?” “neuter noster est.”
5. quō post hōc bellum liberōs tuōs mittēs? nōs enim pessimus tyrannus reget nec liberī esse poterimus.
6. iste necāre rēginam cōsiliū habet, sed illae bonae eam monēbunt servābuntque.
7. sī illōs bonōs adiuvāre audēmus, haec loca libera erunt ab armīs cōpiisque istius tyrannī.
8. amīcamne tuam vidisti sōlam in illō locō herī?
9. aliī aquam bibere solēbant, aliī vīnum cum aquā. nōnnullī autem vīnum sine aquā bibēbant.
10. aliud est dīcere, aliud est facere. et dīcite ergō et facite!
11. Sempronia erat uxor alterius frātris, Tullia alterius.

12. alius magister discipulās laudābit, alius culpābit. nōnnūllī autem nihil facient.
13. imperātor cōpiās ad Graecōs dūxit. hī igitur illum propter exitium civitātum culpant.
14. pater haec pulchra dōna nōbīs dedit. alterum autem ex hīs est magnum, alterum parvum.
15. nisi ūnus ex filiīs vestrīs vērītātem dīcere audēbit, nec cīvītās nec liberī vestrī erunt liberī.
16. medicī nūllum remedium huius morbī facere poterant. multī igitur in illō locō perivērunt.
17. I shall remain happy in this place, since our state has not only peace but also good laws.
18. Will you (sg.) be able to teach those students, if they will not listen?
19. The boy will not be able to endure (tolerāre) this labour, for he is not well (valēre).
20. There was a time when those men used to come to Rome with our friends. Now, however, they come alone.
21. When the people came to the temple, a beautiful maiden was accustomed (use the imperfect) to speak about the goddesses.

## Ancient Readings

1. ratiō docet et explānat.  
**explānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** — “explain”  
*Cicero, De Officiis 1.101*
2. nec timidē prōmitte: trahunt prōmissa puellās.  
**timidē** (adv.) — “timidly”  
**prōmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -misum** — “promise”  
**prōmissum, -ī, n.** — “a promise”  
*Ovid, Ars Amatoria 1.629*
3. nātūra agit semper per viās simplicēs.  
**simplicēs** — “simple” (plural accusative)  
*Leibnitz*

4. Scīpiō, quamquam est mortuus, vīvit tamen semperque vīvet;  
virtūtem enim eius amāvī.  
Scīpiō — (the name of one of Rome’s most famous generals)  
quamquam est mortuus — “although he is dead”  
Cicero, *De Amicitia* 102
5. Sōcratēs p̄rimus philosophiam dēvocāvit ē caelō et in hominēs  
intrōdūxit et incēpit dē vītā et mōribus cōgitāre.  
dēvocāre — *dē-* + *vocāre*  
intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum — (sounds like?)  
Cicero, *Tusculanae Disputationes* 5.10
6. magna paupertās venit nōn ex inopiā magnā, sed ex magnā cōpiā.  
paupertās, -tātis, f. — “poverty” (ch. 14)  
inopia, -ae, f. — “scarcity”  
Aulus Gellius, *Noctes Atticae* 9.8.1
7. foedus inter mē et tē est et inter patrem meum et patrem tuum.  
foedus, -eris, n. — “treaty; alliance”  
Vulgate, 2 *Chron.* 16:3
8. nōn ūnīus terrae, sed tōtīus nātūrae interpretēs sumus.  
interpres, -etis, m. — “an interpreter”  
Plinius Maior, *Historia Naturalis* 18.214
9. aliud est dare, aliud prōmittere.  
prōmittō, -ere — “to promise”  
Ancient proverb
10. ubi vitia nōn sunt, ibi nec virtūtī locus est.  
Ancient proverb
11. vīta nec bonum nec malum est; bonī et malī locus est.  
Seneca, *Epistulae Morales* 99.12
12. morbus, exitium, ignis: nihil hōrum repentīnum est.  
ignis, -is, m. — “fire”  
repentīnus, -a, -um — “sudden”  
Seneca, *De Tranquillitate Animi* 11
13. virtūs sōla, sī adest, vītā efficit beātā.  
adsum, adesse — “to be present”  
efficit — (ex + facere) ≈ *facit*  
Cicero, *De Finibus* 5.78

14. ūnum contrāriōrum nōn potest esse causa alterīus. malum autem est contrārium bonō. ergō bonum nōn potest esse causa malī.

**contrārium, -iī n.** — “an opposite, antithesis”

*Thomas Aquinas, Summa Theologica, pt. I, quaes. 49*

15. nihil aliud est ēbrietās nisi voluntāria īnsānia.

**ēbrietās, -tātis** — “drunkenness”

**voluntāria īnsānia** — (sounds like?)

*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 83.18*

16. sōlus erō quoniam nōn possum esse tuus.

*Propertius, Elegiae 2. 9. 46*

17. nēc vitia nostra nēc remedia tolerāre possumus.

*Livy, Ab Urbe Condita, Praefatio 9*

18. inter dominum et servum nūlla amīcitia est.

*Curtius Rufus, Historiae 7.8*

19. nullum magnum ingenium sine mixturā dementiae fuit.

**ingenium, -iī, n.** — “talent”

**mixtura, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)

**dementia, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)

*Aristotle apud Seneca, De Tranquillitate Animi 17.10*

20. fortūna multīs dat nimium, satis nūllī.

**satis** — “enough”

**nimum** — “too much”

*Martial, Epigrammata, 12.10.2*

21. fugere nōn potes necessitatēs, potes vincere. erit via. et hanc tibi viam dabit philosophia. ad philosophiam tē necesse est dare, sī cupis salvus esse, sī securus, sī beātus, denique sī cupis esse, quod est maximum, liber.

**necessitas, -tātis, f.** — “necessity”

**denique** — (adv.) “finally” (15)

**quod est maximum** — “that which is the greatest thing”

*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 37.3*

### Legal maxim #25

audi alteram partem.

**pars, partis, f.** — “part, side”

*Legal principle establishing that there cannot be a fair trial unless both sides are heard.*

**Legal maxim #26**

in locō parentis

**parens, parentis, m./f.** — (sounds like?)

*Description of the status of someone entrusted with the rights, duties and responsibilities of a parent.*

**Legal maxim #29**

ūnīus dictum, dictum nūllius.

**dictum, -ī, n.** — “statement”

*The evidence of a single witness is not sufficient to establish any critical and material fact. (Relevant only in some jurisdictions.)*

**Let us lie in bed kissing...**

hōc nūllus labor est ruborque nūllus:

hōc iuvit, iuvat et diū iuvābit;

hōc nōn dēficit incipitque semper.

**hōc** *here refers to kissing*

**rubor, -ōris, m.** — “shame”

**diū** — (adv.) “for a long time” (ch. 11)

**dēficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum** — “fail, forsake; cease, disappear”

*Petronius, Anthologia Latina 700*

**John Owen 3.113****AD PONTICUM**

saepe rogās, “quot habēs annōs?” respondeō, nūllōs.

quārē? annōs habuī, Pontice, nōn habeō.

**rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** — “to ask”

**quot** — “how many...?”

**Ponticus** — (a man’s name)

**Noctua et Sōl**

noctua sōlem culpābat; huius enim radii nimis splendōris habuērunt. sōl autem dixit, “Nōlī mē culpāre, sed oculōs tuōs.”

**noctua, -ae, f.** — “an owl”

**sōl, sōlis, m.** — “the sun”

**nimis splendōris** — “too much (of) brightness”

**radius, -ii, m.** — “a ray, a beam; a wheel-spoke”

*Adapted from Aesopus apud G.H. Stoddard, The New Delectus, p. 109*

## The Hīc Haec Hōc song

*(sung to the tune of “Hail, Hail, the Gang’s All Here!”)*

**hīc, haec**, then comes **hōc**;

**huius** means “of this”;

**huic** is “to *or* for this”.

**hunc, hanc**, and then **hōc**;

ablative is **hōc, hāc, hōc!**

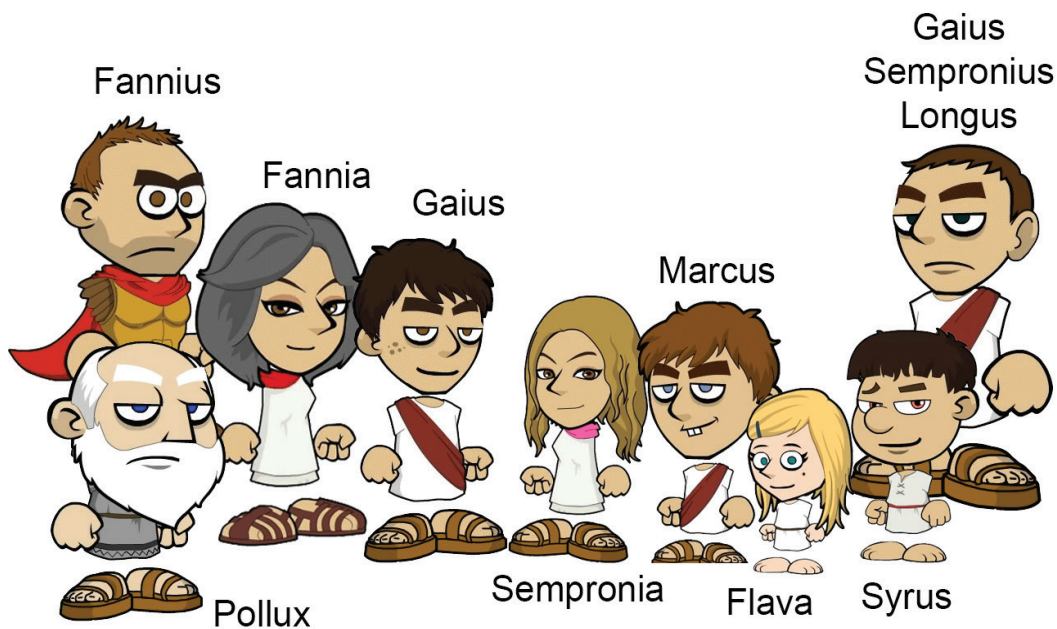
**hī, hae**, then comes **haec**;

**hōrum, hārum, hōrum**;

**hīs, hīs, hīs!**

**hōs, hās**, and then **haec**;

ablative is **hīs, hīs, hīs!**



### Put it into practice

Using the image of a Roman family opposite, in groups of two or three:

- \* note that 'hic' will refer to the characters on your sheet; 'ille' to the characters on your partner's sheet; use 'iste' sometimes for 'ille'
- Round one.** Nominatives and accusatives and genitives
- One student touches one of the characters on his own sheet and says 'hic/haec est \_\_\_\_\_. Quem tango?' (quem = 'whom' accusative of 'who')
- Another touches the same character and answers 'ille/illa est \_\_\_\_\_. tangis illum/illam.'
- The first student touches the same character asks 'quis est hic/haec?'
- Student #2 defines him with reference to someone else: e.g. 'ille est frater illius puellae' (pointing to the girl in question).
- Some familial facts that you may want to know:
- Fannia and Fannius are brother and sister.
- Fannia and Sempronius Longus are husband and wife
- Marcus, Gaius, and Sempronia are the children of Fannia and Sempronius Longus
- Flava, and Syrus are the family's slaves.
- Pollux (genitive, Pollucis) is an ex-slave, or freedman
- Some Latin terms that you may find helpful:
- avunculus, -i, m. — 'uncle'
- libertus, -i, m — 'freedman'
- patronus, -i, m. — 'patron' (the former owner of a freed slave)

**Round two.** Repeat using plurals. **Round three.** Repeat using imperfects Have student #1 touch someone for 5 seconds and then remove his finger. His question is now 'quem tangebam?' **Round four.** Repeat using, but ask 'ubi est \_\_\_\_\_', with the answer being proximus (next to) + dative. **Round five.** Repeat rounds 1, 2, and 3 using ablatives of means, singular and plural. (digitus - "finger"; clavicula, -ae, f. = pen)



# 10

---

PERSONAL PRONOUNS

NĒMŌ

## Vocabulary to learn

### pronouns

**ego, mei, mihi, mē, mē** — I  
**is, ea, id** (*gen: eius*) — he/she/it  
**nōs, nostrum/nostri, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs** — we, us  
**tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē** — you (sg.)  
**vōs, vestrum/vestri, vōbīs, vōs, vōbīs** — you (pl.)

### verbs

**dēmonstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** — to show, demonstrate; indicate, point out  
**ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvēnī, ēventum** — to happen, befall; come out, come forth  
**inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum** — to come upon, find  
**labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum** — to work, strive; to suffer  
**lateō, latēre, latuī, ~** — to hide, lie hid, be concealed; lurk  
**timeō, timēre, timuī, ~** — to fear, be afraid of

### nouns

**castra, -ōrum, n.** — a military camp, an encampment  
**cupiditās, cupiditātis, f.** — desire, longing; greed; passion, lust  
**dīvitiae, dīvitiārum, f. pl.** — riches, wealth  
**insidiae, -ārum, f. pl.** — plots, treachery; an ambush  
**laus, laudis, f.** — praise; glory, distinction  
**mīles, mīlitis, m.** — soldier  
**nēmō, nūllius m./f.** — no one, nobody  
**potestās, -tātis, f.** — power, authority, ability  
**senectūs, senectūtis, f.** — old age  
**studium, -iī, n.** — zeal, eagerness; endeavor; study

### prepositions and other

**atque** (*or ac*) — and  
**apud** — (prep. + acc.) in the presence of, at the house of, among; near  
**contrā** — (prep. + acc.) against, facing, opposite  
**etiam** — even, also  
**nam** — for (roughly the equivalent of *enim*, but not postpositive)  
**praeter** — (prep. + acc.) besides, except for, apart from; beyond, past  
**prō** — (prep. + abl.) on behalf of; instead of; in front of  
**sub** — (prep. + abl.) under (used when something is at rest)  
**sub** — (prep. + acc.) under (used when something is moving under)  
**unde** — from where? whence

## The 3rd Person Personal Pronoun (is, ea, id)

The personal pronoun **is, ea, id** (“he”, “she”, “it”) declines much like the demonstratives. Note especially the genitive singular (**eius**) and dative singular (**eī**).

|                             |                             |                            |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>is</b> — “he”            | <b>ea</b> — “she”           | <b>id</b> — “it”           |
| <b>eius</b> — “of him, his” | <b>eius</b> — “of her, her” | <b>eius</b> — “of it, its” |
| <b>eī</b> — “to/for him”    | <b>eī</b> — “to/for her”    | <b>eī</b> — “to/for it”    |
| <b>eum</b> — “him”          | <b>eam</b> — “her”          | <b>id</b> — “it”           |
| <b>eō</b> — “by/with him”   | <b>eā</b> — “by/with her”   | <b>eō</b> — “by/with it”   |

The plural forms:

|   |   |   |
|---|---|---|
| <b>eī, iī</b><br>— “they”                 | <b>eae</b><br>— “they”                    | <b>ea</b><br>— “they”                     |
| <b>eōrum</b><br>— “of them, their”        | <b>eārum</b><br>— “of them, their”        | <b>eōrum</b><br>— “of them, their”        |
| <b>eīs, iīs, īs</b><br>— “to/for them”    | <b>eīs, iīs, īs</b><br>— “to/for them”    | <b>eīs, iīs, īs</b><br>— “to/for them”    |
| <b>eōs</b><br>— “them”                    | <b>eās</b><br>— “them”                    | <b>ea</b><br>— “them”                     |
| <b>eīs, iīs, īs</b><br>— “by/w/from them” | <b>eīs, iīs, īs</b><br>— “by/w/from them” | <b>eīs, iīs, īs</b><br>— “by/w/from them” |

As a pronoun, **is, ea, id** regularly replaces a noun:

- ☞ **dōnum puerō dedī.** — “I gave a gift to the boy.”
- ☞ **id eī dedī.** — “I gave it to him.”
- ☞ **carmina amīcae recitābāt** — “He was reciting the poems to a girlfriend”
- ☞ **ea eae recitābānt** — “He was reciting them to her”

### Put it into practice

Translate the following short sentences.

- discipulus id discet.
- discipulī eius ibi manēbunt.
- ei id dabimus.
- magister eōs docēbat.
- cōnsilia eōrum audiam.
- eīs id mittēbant.

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

### is, ea, id as a demonstrative

In addition to acting as the personal pronoun of the third person, **is, ea, id** also can function as a demonstrative adjective that is translated as “that” or “those”. (It is best regarded as a weak equivalent of **ille**.)

- ☞ **is vir mē vidit.** — “That man saw me.”
- ☞ **eōs militēs vidēmus.** — “We see those soldiers.”

#### **Put it into practice**

Translate the following short sentences.

- |                                    |                                |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 7. dominus eōs servōs vocābat.     | 10. remediumne est eius morbi? |
| 8. eī milites eum iuvābunt.        | 11. vidēbisne ea templa?       |
| 9. imperātor eum militem mittēbat. |                                |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

### Possessive adjectives and genitive of possession

Latin handles possession differently depending on whether the possessor is in the first (“my”, “our”), second (“your”), or third person (“he”, “she”, “it”).

In the first and second person, the possessive adjectives **meus, tuus, noster**, and **vester**, agree with the thing possessed:

- ☞ **filiam meam videō.** — “I see my daughter”
- ☞ **filiam tuam videō.** — “I see your daughter”

For the pronoun **is, ea, id**, by contrast, the genitive of a personal pronoun is used (**eius, eōrum, eārum**):

- ☞ **filiam eius videō.** — “I see his daughter”
- ☞ **filiam eōrum videō.** — “I see their daughter”

These are genitives of possession.

#### **Put it into practice**

Translate the following short sentences.

- |                                   |                                   |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 12. id mēis filiis dēmonstrābant. | 15. vitia eorum culpābam.         |
| 13. id filiis eius dabunt.        | 16. de insidiis eius cōgitābimus. |
| 14. vitia tua tolerābō.           | 17. de insidiis tuis dicēbamus.   |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Personal Pronouns of the 1st and 2nd Persons

You have already been using the personal pronouns “me”, “us” and “you”. Their full paradigms, however, need to be mastered. These are:

|             |                |                |                |                 |
|-------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|-----------------|
| <i>nom.</i> | <b>ego</b>     | “I”            | <b>tū</b>      | “you” (sg.)     |
| <i>gen.</i> | <b>meī</b>     | “of me”        | <b>tuī</b>     | “of you”        |
| <i>dat.</i> | <b>mihi</b>    | “to/for me”    | <b>tibi</b>    | “to/for you”    |
| <i>acc.</i> | <b>mē</b>      | “me”           | <b>tē</b>      | “you”           |
| <i>abl.</i> | <b>mē</b>      | “by/w/from me” | <b>tē</b>      | “by/w/from you” |
| <i>nom.</i> | <b>nōs</b>     | “we”           | <b>vōs</b>     | “you” (pl.)     |
| <i>gen.</i> | <b>nostrum</b> | “of us”        | <b>vestrum</b> | “of you”        |
|             | <b>nostrī</b>  | “of us”        | <b>vestrī</b>  | “of you”        |
| <i>dat.</i> | <b>nōbīs</b>   | “to/for us”    | <b>vōbīs</b>   | “to/for you”    |
| <i>acc.</i> | <b>nōs</b>     | “us”           | <b>vōs</b>     | “you”           |
| <i>abl.</i> | <b>nōbīs</b>   | “by/w/from us” | <b>vōbīs</b>   | “by/w/from you” |

The forms should cause no trouble, and you know many of them already.

(Note that the genitive has two forms. Although they are used in different Latin idioms, both can be translated into English as ‘of’.)

### Possession and personal pronouns

One point that may be slightly counter-intuitive concerns the genitives: the genitives of the first and second person pronouns are never used for possession. Possession is expressed through the possessive pronouns **meus**, **tuus**, **noster**, and **vester**.

- ☞ **in oculis meis** — “in my eyes” (possessive adjective **meus -a -um**)
- ☞ **in oculis eius** — “in his eyes” (singular genitive of the pronoun **is, ea, id**)
- ☞ **in oculis vestrīs** — “in your eyes” (possessive adjective **vester -tra -trum**)
- ☞ **in oculis eōrum** — “in their eyes” (plural genitive of the pronoun **is, ea, id**)

Instead these are used for the other ways in which the genitive is used:

- ☞ **sine tuō amōre mei** — “without your love of me” (that is, I am the object of your love)
- ☞ **sine nostrō amōre vestrī** — “without our love of you” (that is, you are the object of our love)
- ☞ **sine parte mei** — “without a part of me”
- ☞ **nēmō vestrum** — “none of you”

(Some of these uses will be discussed in a later chapter.)

## Nēmō

The pronoun **nēmō** (“no one”) is slightly irregular, taking its genitive and ablative forms from **nūllus**.

|                   |                    |                        |
|-------------------|--------------------|------------------------|
| <i>nom. sing.</i> | <b>nēmō</b>        | no one                 |
| <i>gen. sing.</i> | <b>nūllius</b>     | of no one              |
| <i>dat. sing.</i> | <b>nēmini</b>      | to/for no one          |
| <i>acc. sing.</i> | <b>nēminem</b>     | no one ( <i>d.o.</i> ) |
| <i>abl. sing.</i> | <b>nūllō/nūllā</b> | by/w/from no one       |

The word **nēmō** only exists in the singular.

### Put it into practice

Translate the following short sentences.

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 18. nēminī illum locum dēmonstrābimus. | 21. magister nēminem laudābat.  |
| 19. nēmō cōpiās terrēbit.              | 22. medicus dē nūllō cōgitābat. |
| 20. insidiās nūllius tolerābunt.       |                                 |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Practice Sentences

- dum ratio nōs ducēbat, valēre poterāmus et magna gerere.
- deus mortuōrum sub terrā vivit, et animī vivōrum ad eum adībunt.
- ista vitia nullum remedium habent nisi labōrem tempusque. hodiē ergō labōrāre incipere dēbētis.
- ōtium multa mala docet puerōs. nam in ōtiō pessima latent vitia.
- militēs apud nōs vocāre dēbēmus; vēritātem enim dē causīs hōrum periculōrum dēmonstrāre poterunt.
- frāter noster amōrem vestrī magnum habet. vōbīs igitur laudem multam dabit.
- māter nostra nōs semper monēbat ac nōbīs hoc cōsilium dabat: “manēte in locō vestrō!”
- aliī imperātōrem timuērunt, aliī militēs eius. sed tamen nōn fugiēbant. quō enim ire poterant?

9. iste nōn solum pessimōs laudāre incēpit sed etiam contrā optimōs insidiās faciēbat.
10. eōs ad ea loca cum aliīs militibus imperātor herī mīsīt.
11. in illīs castrīs erant perīcula magna atque multa. nēmō autem ex eō locō fugiēbat.
12. post paucās hōrās iūstitiam causae nostrae dēmōnstrāre potuimus.
13. neuter medicus ūllum istius morbī remedium invenire potest. nōnnūlli igitur perībunt.
14. multī scrīptōrēs verba plēna laudis dē hīs trādent. fāma igitur nostra perpetua erit.
15. The soldiers will bear arms against the wicked king. For they are not able to live under his authority.
16. The entire Roman state strives (*labōrāre*) to find a cause of war.
17. My brother wrote a song about our father's courage, but he (the latter) was unable to listen. For he did not have any time.
18. This road leads (*dūcere*) to many places, but it will not lead you (pl.) home.
19. Help (sg.) your father in the fields, for he is not able to do the work without you.

## Ancient Readings

1. dīcere bene nēmō potest, nisi bene intellegit.  
*Cicero, Brutus 23*
2. deōs nēmō sānus timet.  
*Seneca, De Beneficiis 4.19.1*
3. etiam sine magistrō vitia hominēs discere possunt.  
**etiam** — “even, also”  
*Seneca, Quaestiones Naturales 3.30.8*
4. nihil, praeter cibum, nātūra cupit.  
*cibus, -ī, m.* — food, nourishment  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 119*
5. tū enim, Caesar, cīvitatē dare potes hominibus, verbō nōn potes.  
**cīvitatē** — “citizenship”  
*Suetonius, De Grammaticis et Rhetoribus 22* (These words were spoken by a grammarian to the Emperor Tiberius after he had used a barbaric word.)
6. quaerētis mē, et nōn inveniētis, et ubi egō sum, vōs nōn potestis venīre.  
**quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum** — “to ask, seek”  
*Vulgate, John 7:34*
7. quid faciet is homō in tenēbrīs? nam nihil timet nisi testem et iūdicem.  
**tenēbrae, -ārum, f. pl.** — “darkness”  
**testem et iūdicem** — “the witness and the judge” (i.e., the court-room)  
*Cicero, De Legibus 1.41*
8. viātor, viātor, quod tū es, egō fui; quod nunc sum, et tū eris.  
**viātor, -ōris, m.** — “traveller” (here, vocative)  
**quod** — “that which, what”  
**et** — (here) “also, too”  
*Funerary inscription (CIL 11. 6243)*
9. quid ergō dicēmus ad haec? sī Deus prō nōbīs est, quis contrā nōs esse potest?  
**quid** — “what...?”  
**quis** — “who...?”  
*Vulgate, Romans 8:31*



10. prō patriā, prō libertāte, prō vitā certāmus.  
**certō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum** — “to struggle, fight”  
*Sallust, Bellum Catilinae* 58.2
11. cum nātūrā, nōn contrā eam, vīvere dēbēmus.  
*Quintilian, Institutio Oratoria* 12. 11. 13
12. vitā mortuōrum in memoriā manet vivōrum.  
**memoria, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)  
*Cicero, Philippica* 9.10
13. ‘Bonum ex malō nōn ēvenit; dīvitiae ēveniunt autem ex avaritiā;  
dīvitiae ergō nōn sunt bonum.’  
**dīvitiae, -ārum, f. pl.** — “riches” (13)  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales* 87.22
14. nōn solum nōbīs dīvitiās cupimus, sed etiam liberīs, amīcīs,  
maximēque patriae.  
**dīvitiae, -ārum, f. pl.** — “riches”  
**maximēque** — “and (-que) especially (maximē)”  
*Cicero, De Officiis* 3.63
15. nihil aliud est philosophia praeter studium sapientiae.  
*Cicero, De Officiis* 2.5
16. ambitiō nihil aliud est nisi immoderāta cupiditās bonōrum aut  
glōriae.  
**ambitiō, -tiōnis, f.** — “ambition”  
**immoderāta** — “without measure; unrestrained”  
*M. J. B. Gardin-Dumesnil, Latin Synonyms with their Different Significations (London, 1809), 54*
17. antiquīs temporibus multī nōn solum pecūniam, sed etiam vitam  
prōfundere prō patriā solēbant.  
**antiquīs temporibus** — “in ancient times” (ablative)  
**prōfundo, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum** — “to pour forth”  
*Cicero, De Officiis* 1.84
18. equus Gaii Caesāris nūllum praeter Caesārem dorsō accēpit.  
**dorsō** — “on his back”  
**accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum** — “accept”  
*Solinus* 35

19. primī parentes nostrī erant Adam et Eva; ille pater, haec mater: ergō nōs sumus fratres.

**parentes** — (sounds like?)

*Augustine, Sermones 56.10*

20. libertās et cupiditas laudis humanae ad facta compulit maxima Rōmānōs.

**cupiditas, -tātis, f.** — *desire* (10)

**laus, laudis, f.** (10) — *praise*

*Augustine, De Civitate Dei 5.18*

### Legal maxim #31

id quod nostrum est sine factō nostrō ad alium transferri nōn potest.

**id quod nostrum est** — *‘that which is ours’*

**transferri** — *‘be transferred’*

*Personal property cannot be alienated without an act of its rightful owner.*

### Legal maxim #32

da mihi factum, dabō tibi iūs.

**da** — *(imperative)*

**iūs, iūris, n.** — *“the law, justice”*

*It is incumbent on the parties in a case to furnish the facts and the responsibility of the judge to apply the law appropriately.*

### Legal maxim #33

lēx nēminem cōgit ad vāna.

**cōgō, cōgere, cōēgi, coactum** — *“compel”*

**vānus, -a, -um** — *“pointless, empty”*

*The law will not force parties to perform acts that have no concrete point.*

### Virtues and vices are similar

vitia sub virtūtum nōmine saepe latent: temeritās sub nōmine fortitūdinis latet, moderātiōnem vocāmus ignaviam, prō cautiōne timōrem accipimus.

**temeritās, -tātis, f.** — *“recklessness, temerity”*

**fortitūdō, fortitūdinis, f.** — *“bravery, strength”*

**moderātiō, -tiōnis, f.** — (sounds like?)

**ignāvia, -ae, f.** — *“inactivity, laziness”*

**cautiō, -tiōnis, f.** — (sounds like?)

**accipiō, -ere, -cēpī, acceptum** — *“to accept”*

*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 45.7*

# 11

---

ĪDEM, EADEM, IDEM

THE PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT

## Vocabulary to learn

### verbs

---

āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum — to lose; let go, send away

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum — to fall

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum\* — rejoice

\* like audēre and solēre in Ch. 8b, gaudēre forms its perfects in a compound that includes a form of the verb 'to be': gāvīsus est = "he rejoiced", gāvīsa est = "she rejoiced", gāvīsi sunt = "they rejoiced"

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sensum — to feel, perceive, think

stō, stāre, stetī, statum — to stand, stand still

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum — to hold, keep; possess; restrain

### nouns

---

auctōritās, -tātis, f. — authority, influence; dignity

caput, capitis, n. — head; heading, chapter

inimicus, -ī, m. — an enemy

mundus, -ī, m. — the world

philosophus, -ī, m. — a philosopher

poena, poenae, f. — penalty, punishment

poenam dare — to pay the penalty, be punished

principium, principii, n. — beginning

### adjectives

---

acerbus, -a, -um — bitter, harsh

amicus, -a, -um — friendly, loving

cārus, -a, -um — dear; expensive

īdem, eadem, idem — the same

inimicus, -a, -um — unfriendly, hostile, inimical

### other

---

diū (adv.) — long, for a long time

nūper (adv.) — recently

quamquam (adv.) — although

quia (conj.) — because

quod (conj.) — because (also = 'that which', 'that')

## Īdem, eadem, idem

The demonstrative adjective **īdem, eadem, idem** (“the same”) is formed by adding the suffix **-dem** to the end of **is, ea, id** (“he, she, it”), resulting in these forms:

|                   |                           |                              |                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------|
|                   | <i>masc.</i>              | <i>fem.</i>                  | <i>neut.</i>    |
| <i>nom. sing.</i> | <b>īdem</b>               | <b>eadem</b>                 | <b>idem</b>     |
| <i>gen. sing.</i> | <b>eiusdem</b>            | <b>eiusdem</b>               | <b>eiusdem</b>  |
| <i>dat. sing.</i> | <b>eīdem</b>              | <b>eīdem</b>                 | <b>eīdem</b>    |
| <i>acc. sing.</i> | <b>eundem</b>             | <b>eandem</b>                | <b>idem</b>     |
| <i>abl. sing.</i> | <b>eōdem</b>              | <b>eādem</b>                 | <b>eōdem</b>    |
| <i>nom. plur.</i> | <b>īdem, eīdem, iīdem</b> | <b>eaedem</b>                | <b>eadem</b>    |
| <i>gen. plur.</i> | <b>eōrundem</b>           | <b>eārundem</b>              | <b>eōrundem</b> |
| <i>dat. plur.</i> |                           | <b>īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem</b> |                 |
| <i>acc. plur.</i> | <b>eōsdem</b>             | <b>eāsdem</b>                | <b>eadem</b>    |
| <i>abl. plur.</i> |                           | <b>īsdem, eīsdem, iīsdem</b> |                 |

The forms themselves should not present too much difficulty: they are merely **-dem** added to the personal pronoun. Note, however, the slight differences:

- ↪ in the nominative singular masculine, **is + dem** becomes **īdem**;
- ↪ in the accusative singular masculine, **eum + dem** becomes **eundem**;
- ↪ in the accusative singular feminine, **eam + dem** becomes **eandem**;
- ↪ in the genitive plurals, we have **eōrundem** and **eārundem**.

Usage is like other demonstratives:

- ↪ **dē eōdem cōnsiliō scrīpsit.** — “He wrote about the same plan.”
- ↪ **eāndem fēminam amāmus.** — “We love the same woman.”
- ↪ **eadem pericula timuērunt.** — “They feared the same dangers.”

### Put it into practice

Translate the following prepositional phrases.

1. ad eundem rēgem
2. propter idem carmen
3. post idem bellum
4. propter eōsdem labōres
5. sine eādem virtūte
6. apud eōsdem amīcōs
7. inter eōsdem frātrēs
8. per eadem pericula
9. about the same writers
10. about the same body
11. with the same fear

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

Note that like any adjective, **īdem**, **eadem**, **īdem** can be used substantively:

- ⇒ **eōsdem videō.** — “I see the same men.”
- ⇒ **eadem mē terrent.** — “The same things frighten me.”
- ⇒ **īdem ibi dixit.** — “The same man spoke there.”

#### Put it into practice

Translate the following prepositional phrases

- |                    |                   |                 |
|--------------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| 12. cum eōdem      | 16. praeter eadem | 20. ante eandem |
| 13. praeter eōsdem | 17. contra eandem | 21. sub eōdem   |
| 14. sine eīsdem    | 18. apud eundem   | 22. pro eīsdem  |
| 15. ante eadem     | 19. post eadem    | 23. per eadem   |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## The Perfect System

You have been reading and translating the perfect tense from the first lesson. It is formed from the third principal part that you have learned for a number of verbs.

|                 |  |
|-----------------|--|
| <b>vīcī</b>     | “I conquered” or “I have conquered”                |
| <b>vīcistī</b>  | “you conquered” or “you have conquered”            |
| <b>vīcīt</b>    | “he/she/it conquered” or “he/she/it has conquered” |
| <b>vīcimūs</b>  | “we conquered” or “we have conquered”              |
| <b>vīcistis</b> | “you conquered” or “you have conquered”            |
| <b>vīcērunt</b> | “they conquered” or “they have conquered”          |

The perfect stem also provides the basis for two other tenses: the *pluperfect* and the *future perfect*.

### The pluperfect tense

The *pluperfect* (**plūs quam perfectum** = “more than complete”) is the tense of completed action in the past — the tense of the past before the past:

|                  |                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------|
| <b>vīceram</b>   | “I <b>had</b> conquered”         |
| <b>vīcerās</b>   | “you <b>had</b> conquered”       |
| <b>vīcerat</b>   | “he/she/it <b>had</b> conquered” |
| <b>vīcerāmus</b> | “we <b>had</b> conquered”        |
| <b>vīcerātis</b> | “you <b>had</b> conquered”       |
| <b>vīcerant</b>  | “they <b>had</b> conquered”      |

The endings will not present you with much trouble: they are in effect identical to the perfect stem + **eram** (the imperfect of **sum**).

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following verbs.

- |                 |              |                          |
|-----------------|--------------|--------------------------|
| 24. gesserant   | 29. amāverat | 34. we had praised       |
| 25. vīderam     | 30. dederam  | 35. we had accomplished  |
| 26. cōgitāveram | 31. potuerat | 36. we had blamed        |
| 27. satiāverās  | 32. fueram   | 37. you (pl.) had helped |
| 28. errāverant  | 33. fuerās   | 38. you (sg.) had called |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**The future perfect tense**

The *future perfect* is the tense of completed action in the future — the tense of the past just before the future. (It is the tense of the break-up letter: “By the time *you will have read* this letter...”).

|                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| <u>vīcerō</u>    | “I <b>shall have</b> conquered”        |
| <u>vīceris</u>   | “you <b>will have</b> conquered”       |
| <u>vīcerit</u>   | “he/she/it <b>will have</b> conquered” |
| <u>vīcerimus</u> | “we <b>shall have</b> conquered”       |
| <u>vīceritis</u> | “you <b>will have</b> conquered”       |
| <u>vīcerint</u>  | “they <b>will have</b> conquered”      |

Again endings are fairly easy: they are in effect identical to the perfect stem + **erō** (the future of **sum**), with the exception of the third person plural, which is **-erint** rather than **-ērunt** (which is already being used as the perfect 3rd person plural). (The future perfect indicative is not very common.)

**Put it into practice**

Translate the following verbs.

- |                 |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 39. timuerit    | 45. incēperimus |
| 40. dēbuerit    | 46. fefellerint |
| 41. audīverimus | 47. incēperō    |
| 42. rēxerit     | 48. ēgerint     |
| 43. trāxerit    | 49. miserō      |
| 44. lēgeritis   | 50. cēperimus   |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

## Practice Sentences

1. liberī patrem fefellērant poenamque dedērunt.
2. ille discipulus haec carmina bella legēbat quod ei dē vitae voluptātibus scrīpserātis.
3. quamquam servī fūgerant, dominus eōrum in eōdem locō remanēbat. illī autem ad eum ibi nūper rediērunt.
4. eundem timōrem sēnsimus quia acerba bella inter populōs incipiēbant.
5. agricola in illō agrō corpus sine capite mortuum invēnerat. ibi igitur nōn manēbat, sed domum sine morā rediit.
6. poterisne vītā beātā nunc agere? nam sine ullā causā nonnullī tuōs inimicōs adiuvāre incipiunt.
7. propter perīcula illōrum temporum pāx semper erat tōtī populō cāra.
8. sī hī verba amīca nōbīs dicent, eōs amābimus. verba enim inimīca nēmō tolerāre dēbet.
9. nātūram superāre sōlus deus potest, sed eam per philosophiam intellegere possumus.
10. militēs contrā rēgem malum arma gerent. nam sub auctoritāte istius vīvere nōn possunt.
11. et philosophus et poēta dē iisdem scrībunt. aliī autem sapientiam philosophōrum laudant, aliī poētārum verba.
12. idem rēx cum patre filiōque ē patriā fugiēbat. nam Graeci hanc vīcērunt.
13. quamquam nihil scrīpseras, tamen dē factīs tuīs tōtus populus audīvit.
14. tōta Ītalia in potestāte Rōmānōrum diū fuerat. illam enim imperātōrēs hōrum vīcerunt.



15. quamquam Mārcus mihi dē tuīs factis dīcēbat et ista culpābat, eadem eī dē tē dīcēbam. ille tamen nōn audiēbat.
16. Our mothers had not understood the nature of that place. Therefore they did not see its dangers.
17. They *kept sending*\* the same things to me. (\* use the imperfect tense)
18. The soldiers killed the tyrant because the latter\* had killed the true king. (\* use **hic**)
19. My other daughter did not have the same reasons.
20. When the general summoned him, he was hiding among the women. For he feared the same dangers.

## Ancient Readings

1. voluptās nūllum habet cum virtūte commercium.  
**commercium** — “commerce; business; communication, fellowship”  
*Cicero, De Senectute 42*
2. ubi sunt quī ante nōs in mundō fuērunt?  
**quī** — “those who”  
*anon., c. 1275*
3. libertātem nēmō bonus āmittit nisi cum vitā simul.  
**simul** — (adv.) “at the same time”  
*Sallust, Bellum Catilinae 33.2*
4. cum ceciderit inimīcus tuus, nōlī gaudēre.  
**cum** — “when”  
**ceciderit** — (future perfect)  
*Vulgate, Proverbs 24:17*
5. ubi multa capita, ibi multae sententiae.  
*Ancient proverb*
6. dīcere bene nēmō potest, nisi bene intellegit.  
*Cicero, Brutus 23*

7. ubi libertās cecidit, audet liberē nēmō dicere.  
**liberē** — (adv.) “freely”  
*Publilius Syrus*
8. nēmō nostrum idem est in senectūte.  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 58.22*
9. nātūram vocā, fātum, fortūnam; haec eiusdem deī nōmina sunt.  
**fātum, -ī, n.** — “fate”  
*Seneca, De Beneficiis 4.8.3*
10. amīcō inimīcōque bonum semper dā cōsilium: quia amīcus accipiēt, inimīcus spernet.  
**accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum** — “to accept”  
**spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētum** — “to spurn, reject”  
*Gregory of Tours, Historia Francorum 6.32*
11. primum principium nostrae libertātis est libertās arbitrii; eam autem multi habent in verbis, sed in intellectū pauci.  
**arbitrium, -iī, n.** — “judgement, decision”  
*Dante, De Monarchia 1.12.5*
12. parvus error in principiō magnus erit in fine.  
**error, -ōris, m.** — (sounds like?)  
**fines, -is, f.** — “end”  
*Thomas Aquinas, De Ente et Essentia, Prooemium*
13. Pompēius solet aliud sentire et aliud dicere.  
**Pompeius** — (i.e., Pompey the Great, an important general of Cicero’s time)  
*Cicero, Epistulae ad Familiares 8.1.3*
14. inter frātre[m] sorōremque nuptiae prohibitae sunt, sī ab eōdem patre eādēque māt[er]e liberī sunt, aut sī ex utrō eōrum.  
**nuptiae, -ārum, f. pl.** — “a marriage; wedding, nuptials”  
**prohibitus, -a, -um** — “prohibited”  
*Institutiones 1.10*
15. patria mea tōtus hīc mundus est.  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 28.4*

16. optimus enim ōratōr animōs nostrōs et docet et dēlectat et permovet.  
 ōratōr, -ōris, m. — (sounds like?)  
 dēlectō, -āre — “to delight, please”  
 permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum — “to stir up, move; influence”  
 Cicero, *De Optimo Genere Oratorum* 1.3
17. vīvam, sī vivet; si cadet illa, cadam.  
 Propertius, *Elegiae* 2.276.8
18. nec ūllum scelus impūnītum est, quoniam sceleris in scelere poena est.  
 scelus, sceleris, n. — “crime, evil deed; vice”  
 impūnītum — “unpunished”  
 Seneca, *Epistulae Morales* 97.14, adapted
19. quid est sapientia? semper īdem cupere atque īdem nōn cupere.  
 Seneca, *Epistulae Morales* 20.4
20. nēmō nostrum īdem est in senectūte, ut fuit iuvenis; nēmō nostrum est īdem hodiē, ut fuit herī.  
 īdem ... ut — “the same ... as”  
 Seneca, *Epistulae Morales* 58.22

### On Rome and the world:

quamdiū stābit coliseus, stābit et Rōma;  
 quandō cadet coliseus, cadet et Rōma;  
 quandō cadet Rōma, cadet et mundus.  
 quamdiu — “for as long as”  
 coliseus — “the Colosseum” (i.e, the Flavian amphitheatre)  
 Pseudo-Bede, *Collectanea* 1.iii

### Plus ça change ...

nūper erat medicus, nunc est vespillo Diaulus:  
 quod vespillo facit, fēcerat et medicus.  
 nūper — “recently”  
 vespillo -ōnis, m. — “corpse-bearer”  
 Diaulus — (a man’s name)  
 quod — “that which”  
 Martial, *Epigrammata* 1.47

**Legal maxim #34**

emancipātiōne desinunt liberī in potestāte parentum esse.

**emancipatio, emancipatiōnis, f.** — “*emancipation*”

**parens, parentis, m./f.** — (*sounds like?*)

*Explains the legal process by which children can be freed from their parents’ guardianship.*

**Legal maxim #35**

nēmō dēbet bis vexārī prō ūnā et eādē causā.

**bis** — (*adv.*) “*twice*”

**vexārī** — “*to be harassed*” (*here it means “to be tried”*)

*Legal principle which prohibits double jeopardy.*

**Legal maxim #36**

quī sentit commodum, sentīre dēbet et onus.

**quī** — “*he who*”

**commodum, -ī, n.** — “*profit, advantage*”

**onus, oneris, n.** — “*burden, load*”

*Legal doctrine that holds that a person cannot at the same time benefit from and repudiate a legal right.*

**Legal maxim #37**

affidāvit

**affidō, -āre, -āvī, affidātum** — “*to swear, give an oath*”

*An affidavit is a document in which a party ‘has sworn’ to the truth of something.*

# 12

---

THIRD-DECLENSION NOUNS WITH  
I-STEMS

THIRD-DECLENSION ADJECTIVES

## Vocabulary to learn

### nouns

---

- animal, animālis, n.** — animal  
**ars, artis, f.** — art, skill  
**auris, auris, f.** — ear  
**cīvis, cīvis, m./f.** — citizen  
**cor, cordis, n.** — heart  
**hostis, hostis, m.** — enemy (an **inimicus** is a personal enemy; **hostēs** are enemies of a people, kingdom, etc.)  
**iūs, iūris, n.** — right, justice, law  
**mare, maris, n.** — sea  
**mēns, mēntis, f.** — mind  
**mors, mortis, f.** — death  
**ōs, ōris, n.** — mouth; face  
**pars, partis, f.** — part, share, direction; side  
**senex, senis, m./f.** — old man/woman  
**turba, -ae, f.** — mob, crowd; uproar, disturbance  
**urbs, urbis, f.** — city  
**vīs, vīs, f.** (irreg. abl. **vī**) — force, power, violence  
**vīrēs, vīrium, f. pl.** — strength

### adjectives

---

- ācer, ācris, ācre** — sharp; severe, fierce, keen  
**brevis, -e** — short, brief  
**celer, celeris, celere** — swift, quick, rapid  
**dulcis, -e** — sweet  
**facilis, -e** — easy, agreeable  
**difficilis, -e** — hard, difficult, troublesome  
**fortis, -e** — strong, brave, vigorous  
**gravis, -e** — heavy; serious, important  
**ingēns** (gen. **ingentis**) — huge  
**iūcundus, -a, -um** — pleasant, delightful  
**iuvenis, -e** — young, youthful  
**levis, -e** — light, not heavy; trivial  
**omnis, omne** — every, all  
**potens** (gen. **potentis**) — able, powerful, mighty, strong  
**senex** (gen. **senis**) — old, aged  
**similis, -e** — similar to, like, resembling  
**dissimilis, -e** — unlike, different

## Third Declension i-stems

There is an important group of third declension nouns that have the letter “i” in their stems that show up in one place (the genitive plural) in masculine and feminine nouns, and several places in neuter nouns.

### i-stems in masculine and feminine nouns

Consider the following nouns:

|                   | <i>not i-stem</i> | <i>i-stem</i>      | <i>i-stem</i>      | <i>irregular</i>   | <i>cf. vir</i> |
|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------|
| <i>nom. sing.</i> | <b>rēx</b>        | <b>cīvis</b>       | <b>urbs</b>        | <b>vīs</b>         | <i>vir</i>     |
| <i>gen. sing.</i> | <b>rēgis</b>      | <b>cīvis</b>       | <b>urbis</b>       | <b>vīs</b>         | <i>virī</i>    |
| <i>dat. sing.</i> | <b>rēgī</b>       | <b>cīvī</b>        | <b>urbī</b>        | <b>vī</b>          | <i>virō</i>    |
| <i>acc. sing.</i> | <b>rēgem</b>      | <b>cīvem</b>       | <b>urbem</b>       | <b>vīm</b>         | <i>virum</i>   |
| <i>abl. sing.</i> | <b>rēge</b>       | <b>cīve</b>        | <b>urbe</b>        | <b>vī</b>          | <i>virō</i>    |
| <i>nom. plur.</i> | <b>rēgēs</b>      | <b>cīvēs</b>       | <b>urbēs</b>       | <b>vīrēs</b>       | <i>virī</i>    |
| <i>gen. plur.</i> | <b>rēgum</b>      | <b>cīvium</b>      | <b>urbium</b>      | <b>vīrium</b>      | <i>virōrum</i> |
| <i>dat. plur.</i> | <b>rēgibus</b>    | <b>cīvibus</b>     | <b>urbibus</b>     | <b>vīribus</b>     | <i>virīs</i>   |
| <i>acc. plur.</i> | <b>rēgēs</b>      | <b>cīvēs (-īs)</b> | <b>urbēs (-īs)</b> | <b>vīrēs (-īs)</b> | <i>virōs</i>   |
| <i>abl. plur.</i> | <b>rēgibus</b>    | <b>cīvibus</b>     | <b>urbibus</b>     | <b>vīribus</b>     | <i>virīs</i>   |

Masculine and feminine i-stem nouns decline like other third declension nouns, except for the genitive plural, which is **-ium** rather than **-um**. (Also note that in some authors and periods, the masculine and feminine accusative plurals of i-stems can end in **-īs** rather than **-ēs**.)

#### Put it into practice

Give the genitive plural of the following i-stem nouns and translate them.

- |                     |                        |
|---------------------|------------------------|
| 1. ars, artis, f.   | 4. urbs, urbis, f.     |
| 2. mors, mortis, f. | 5. cīvis, cīvis, m./f. |
| 3. pars, partis, f. | 6. mēns, mēntis, f.    |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

Especially worth noting is the noun **vīs** (“violence”), which uses the stem **v-** in the singular (note its ablative in **vī**), but shifts the stem to **vīr-** in the plural, where it has the meaning “strength”. Also take a moment to compare its plurals to the forms of **vir**, **virī**, m. (“man”), where there are several potential confusables.

**i-stems in neuter nouns**

Neuter *i*-stems deserve special attention.

|                   | <i>not i-stem</i> | <i>i-stem</i>  | <i>i-stem</i>     |
|-------------------|-------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| <i>nom. sing.</i> | <b>corpus</b>     | <b>mare</b>    | <b>animal</b>     |
| <i>gen. sing.</i> | <b>corporis</b>   | <b>maris</b>   | <b>animālis</b>   |
| <i>dat. sing.</i> | <b>corporī</b>    | <b>marī</b>    | <b>animālī</b>    |
| <i>acc. sing.</i> | <b>corpus</b>     | <b>mare</b>    | <b>animal</b>     |
| <i>abl. sing.</i> | <b>corpore</b>    | <b>marī</b>    | <b>animālī</b>    |
| <i>nom. plur.</i> | <b>corpora</b>    | <b>maria</b>   | <b>animālīa</b>   |
| <i>gen. plur.</i> | <b>corporum</b>   | <b>marium</b>  | <b>animālīum</b>  |
| <i>dat. plur.</i> | <b>corporibus</b> | <b>maribus</b> | <b>animālībus</b> |
| <i>acc. plur.</i> | <b>corpora</b>    | <b>maria</b>   | <b>animālīa</b>   |
| <i>abl. plur.</i> | <b>corporibus</b> | <b>maribus</b> | <b>animālībus</b> |

In the neuter the *-ī* of the *i*-stem reappears in the ablative singular, the plural nominative and accusative, and the plural genitive.

**Put it into practice**

For each of the following *i*-stem nouns give the form as directed and translate.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 7. acc. plur. of <b>animal</b> , <b>-alis</b> , <b>n.</b> | 10. abl. sing. of <b>mare</b> , <b>maris</b> , <b>n.</b> |
| 8. abl. sing. of <b>civis</b> , <b>civis</b> , <b>m.</b>  | 11. gen. plur. of <b>mare</b> , <b>maris</b> , <b>n.</b> |
| 9. gen. plur. of <b>mens</b> , <b>mentis</b> , <b>f.</b>  | 12. abl. sing. of <b>vis</b> , <b>vis</b> , <b>f.</b>    |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**Identifying *i*-stems**

There are three rules that identify whether a third declension noun is an *i*-stem:

- parisyllabic rule:** if the nominative and genitive singular have the same number of syllables:  
**auris**, **auris**, **f.** (ear), genitive plural **aurium**  
**civis**, **civis**, **m./f.** (citizen), genitive plural **civium**
- multiple-consonant rule:** if the stem of the noun ends in two or more consonants:  
**urbs**, **urbis**, **f.** (city), genitive plural **urbium**  
**pars**, **partis**, **f.** (part), genitive plural **partium**
- neuter-ending rule:** if the neuter nominative singular ends in *-e*, *-al*, or *-ar*:  
**mare**, **maris**, **n.** (sea), genitive plural **marium**  
**animal**, **animālis**, **n.** (animal), genitive plural **animālīum**



**Put it into practice**

For each of the following i-stem nouns: identify whether it is an i-stem, identify which rule, if any makes it so, and give its genitive plural.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 13. <i>hostis, hostis, m.</i> (“enemy”)   | 16. <i>nāvis, nāvis, f.</i> (“ship”)   |
| 14. <i>legiō, legiōnis, f.</i> (“legion”) | 17. <i>munus, muneris, n.</i> (“gift”) |
| 15. <i>mōns, montis, m.</i> (“mountain”)  | 18. <i>lux, lucis, f.</i> (“light”)    |

Now compare your answers to the key in Appendix 1.

**Third Declension Adjectives**

Thus far, most of the adjectives that you have learned have had endings of the first and second declension. Some adjectives, however, have endings from the third declension. These will present you with no great difficulty as long as you remember that all adjectives of the third-declension are *i-stems*.

There are three types, differing in whether the nominative singular forms differ by gender. In some third declension adjectives, the singular nominative forms are different for masculine, feminine, and neuter.

|            | <i>singular</i>  |                 |               | <i>plural</i>    |                 |                |
|------------|------------------|-----------------|---------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
|            | <i>masculine</i> | <i>feminine</i> | <i>neuter</i> | <i>masculine</i> | <i>feminine</i> | <i>neuter</i>  |
| <i>n.</i>  | <b>ācer</b>      | <b>ācris</b>    | <b>ācre</b>   | <b>ācrēs</b>     | <b>ācrēs</b>    | <b>ācria</b>   |
| <i>g.</i>  | <b>ācris</b>     | <b>ācris</b>    | <b>ācris</b>  | <b>ācrium</b>    | <b>ācrium</b>   | <b>ācrium</b>  |
| <i>d.</i>  | <b>ācrī</b>      | <b>ācrī</b>     | <b>ācrī</b>   | <b>ācribus</b>   | <b>ācribus</b>  | <b>ācribus</b> |
| <i>ac.</i> | <b>ācrem</b>     | <b>ācrem</b>    | <b>ācre</b>   | <b>ācrēs</b>     | <b>ācrēs</b>    | <b>ācria</b>   |
| <i>ab.</i> | <b>ācrī</b>      | <b>ācrī</b>     | <b>ācrī</b>   | <b>ācribus</b>   | <b>ācribus</b>  | <b>ācribus</b> |

The masculine and feminine forms are identical except for the nominative. Note, also, that the ablative singular in all genders is **ācrī**.

Most third declension adjectives have two terminations, and the masculine and feminine are identical in all cases, including the nominative:

|            | <i>singular</i>   |               | <i>plural</i>       |                 |
|------------|-------------------|---------------|---------------------|-----------------|
|            | <i>masc./fem.</i> | <i>neuter</i> | <i>masc./fem.</i>   | <i>neuter</i>   |
| <i>n.</i>  | <b>fortis</b>     | <b>forte</b>  | <b>fortēs</b>       | <b>fortia</b>   |
| <i>g.</i>  | <b>fortis</b>     | <b>fortis</b> | <b>fortium</b>      | <b>fortium</b>  |
| <i>d.</i>  | <b>fortī</b>      | <b>fortī</b>  | <b>fortibus</b>     | <b>fortibus</b> |
| <i>ac.</i> | <b>fortem</b>     | <b>forte</b>  | <b>fortēs (-īs)</b> | <b>fortia</b>   |
| <i>ab.</i> | <b>fortī</b>      | <b>fortī</b>  | <b>fortibus</b>     | <b>fortibus</b> |

Finally, there are some adjectives in which masculine, feminine, and neuter are identical in the nominative.

|            | <i>singular</i>   |                 | <i>plural</i>         |                   |
|------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
|            | <i>masc./fem.</i> | <i>neuter</i>   | <i>masc./fem.</i>     | <i>neuter</i>     |
| <i>n.</i>  | <b>potēns</b>     | <b>potēns</b>   | <b>potentēs</b>       | <b>potentia</b>   |
| <i>g.</i>  | <b>potentis</b>   | <b>potentis</b> | <b>potentium</b>      | <b>potentium</b>  |
| <i>d.</i>  | <b>potenti</b>    | <b>potenti</b>  | <b>potentibus</b>     | <b>potentibus</b> |
| <i>ac.</i> | <b>potentem</b>   | <b>potēns</b>   | <b>potentēs (-īs)</b> | <b>potentia</b>   |
| <i>ab.</i> | <b>potenti</b>    | <b>potenti</b>  | <b>potentibus</b>     | <b>potentibus</b> |

The important point to remember is that as *i*-stems, *-i* is found the ablative singular of all genders, the genitive plurals end in *-ium*, and *-ia* in the neuter plural nominative and accusative.

Like all adjectives, third-declension adjectives are often used substantively: **omnēs** often means “all (people)”, and **difficilia** are “difficult (things)”.

## Practice Sentences

1. nautam mortuum ē marī trāximus dum uxor eius vidēbat.
2. vīvere bene dēbēmus dum iuvenēs sumus, nam senectūs veniet, et post eam, mors; post mortem, nihil erit!
3. monuēruntne imperātōrem militēs dē vīribus illārū urbium?
4. ubi est honōris signum, ibi latet saepe cor malum.
5. haec dēbēmus incipere dum vīrēs habēmus. crās enim nova perīcula venient.
6. intellegitne iam omnia iūra hōrum?
7. haec perīcula intellegimus, nam amīcus noster nōs dē hīs per epistulam monuit.
8. ille senex similis est alterī fratrī, dissimilis alterī.
9. sine imperātōre turba militum corpus est sine ratiōne.
10. aqua ex marī acerba est. ergō nēmō eam bibere potest.
11. fortēs virī et fēminae in omnī civitatē vīvēbant. nunc autem nullī fortēs inter nōs vīvunt.

12. potestne pax inter hōs potētēs esse? nam hī semper fuērunt inimīci atque amīci numquam erunt.
13. carmina illius poetae sunt brevia, sed plēna gravium sentiārum. alii igitur in hīs virtūtem inveniunt, alii voluptātem.
14. via ad urbem hanc difficilis longaque est. pauci igitur ibi vīvere cupiunt.
15. Did he understand everything (lit.: “all things”) with his sharp mind?
16. Old philosophers are not accustomed to help young poets.
17. We must have both a sound body and a sound mind.
18. The doctors were not able to preserve the life of the brave soldier. For death was swift.
19. You (pl.) dragged them out of the sea by means of your strength. Nevertheless, they did not thank you.

## Ancient Readings

1. auribus lupum teneō.  
**lupus, -ī, m.** — “wolf”  
*Varro, De Lingua Latina 7.3*
2. nōn vīribus aut celeritāte corporum facta magna gerimus, sed cōnsiliō, auctōritāte, sentiā.  
**celeritās, -tātis, f.** — “speed, quickness”  
**auctōritās, -tātis, f.** — “authority; judgment; reputation, dignity”  
*Cicero, De Senectute, 6.17, adapted*
3. dīvīna nātūra dedit agrōs, ars hūmāna fēcit urbēs.  
**dīvīnus, -a, -um** — (sounds like?)  
*Varro, De Re Rustica 3.1*
4. tūne cīvem ab hoste nātūrā ac locō, nōn animō factisque distinguis?  
**tūne** — *tū + -ne*  
**distingūō, -ere, -stinxi, -stinctum** — “to distinguish”  
*Cicero, Paradoxa Stoicorum 3*

5. inter cor meum et cor tuum nūlla sunt auxilia praeter ōs meum et aurēs tuās.  
**auxilium, -iī, n.** — “help, aid, assistance”  
*Augustine, Epistulae 22*
6. libertātem nātūra etiam mūtis animālibus dedit.  
**mūtus, -a, -um** — “mute, speechless”  
*Tacitus, Historiae 4.17*
7. nātūrae iūra sacra sunt etiam apud pīrātās.  
**sacer, sacra, sacrum** — “sacred, holy”  
**pīrāta, -ae, m.** — “a pirate”  
*Seneca the Elder, Controversiae 7.1.17*
8. intellegere lēgēs est nōn verba eārum tenēre, sed vīm ac potestātem.  
**lēgēs** — plural of *lex*, and direct object of *intellegere*  
*Celsus, Digesta 1.3.17*
9. haec semper in mēnte habēre dēbēs: quid fuisti? quid es? quid eris?  
*St. Bernard*
10. mors nātūrae lēx est, mors officium mortālium malōrumque omnium remedium est.  
**mortālis, -e** — (sounds like?)  
*Seneca, Naturales Quaestiones 6.32.12*
11. dē partibus vitae omnēs cōgitāmus, dē tōtā nēmō cōgitat.  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 71.2*
12. saepe solet similis filius esse patrī.  
*Ancient proverb*
13. philosophus contrā omnēs arma gerit, cum cōgitat.  
**cum** — (here) “when”  
*Publilius Syrus*
14. vīta brevis est, longa ars.  
*Seneca, De Brevitate Vitae 1*
15. quid enim contrā vim sine vī facere possumus?  
*Cicero, Epistulae ad Familiares 12.3*
16. nihil est ab omnī parte beātum.  
**ab** — (here) “in”  
*Horace, Carmina 2.16.27*

17. quod aliis cibus est, aliis est acre venenum.  
**quod** — (here) “that which, what”  
**cibus, -ī, m.** — “food”  
**venenum, -ī, n.** — “poison”  
*Lucretius, De Rerum Natura 4.637*
18. quis posuit in corde hominis sapientiam? et quis dedit gallō intellegentiam?  
**quis** — “who?”  
**pōnō, -ere, posuī, positum** — “put, place”  
**gallus, -ī, m.** — “a rooster”  
**intellegentia, -ae, f.** — (sounds like?)  
*Vulgate, Job 38:36*
19. illa nāvis in flūmine ingēns est, sed in marī parva est.  
**nāvis, nāvis, f.** — “ship”  
**flūmen, flūminis, n.** — “river”  
*Seneca, Epistulae Morales 43.2*
20. fāc bene et sine morā, celerī pede fugit hōra.  
**pēs, pedis, m.** — “foot”  
*Julius Wegeler, Philosophia Patrum 409*
21. omnis locus philosophō patria est.  
*Seneca, Ad Helviam 8.7*
22. nōn sentiunt virī fortēs in aciē vulnera.  
**in aciē** — “in battle”  
**vulnus, vulneris, n.** — “wound”  
*Cicero, Tusculanae Disputationes 2.58*
23. semper in cīvitāte nostrā senectus venerābilis fuit: namque māiōrēs nostrī paene eundem honōrem senibus, quem magistrātibus dabant.  
**venerābilis, -e** — “venerable, respectable”  
**paene** — (adv.) “almost, nearly”  
**māiōrēs nostrī** — “our ancestors”  
**eundem ...quem** — “the same ... that”  
**magistrātibus** — “magistrates” (dative)  
*Callistratus apud Digesta 50.6.6.pr*

**With or without you**

difficilis facilis, iūcundus acerbus, es īdem:

nec tēcum possum vīvere nec sine tē.

*Martial, Epigrammata 12. 46*

**Legal maxim #38**

semel cīvis, semper cīvis.

**semel** — “once”

*Legal principle establishing that citizenship cannot be revoked.*

**Legal maxim #39**

ubi iūs incertum, ibi iūs nūllum.

**incertus, -a, -um** — “uncertain”

*Laws need to be clear and unamiguous.*

**Legal maxim #40**

causa levis litem dēbet habere brevem.

**lis, litem, m.** — “lawsuit” (cf. litigation)

*Trivial cases should not be given serious consideration by the courts.*

**Legal maxim #41**

ubi eadem ratio, ibi īdem iūs, et dē similibus īdem est iūdicium.

**iūdicium, iūdicīi, n.** — “judgment”

*Legal decisions must be consistent with earlier precedents.*

**Legal maxim #42**

Argumentum ab inconvenientī est validum in lege, quia lex nōn  
permittit aliquod inconveniens.

**inconveniēns, -entis** — “inconvenient”

*The principal that statutes should be construed so as to avoid hampering the legitimate activities of government or imposing hardship or injustice on individuals.*

# Appendix

---

PARADIGMS

## Nouns

|    | <u>First</u>           | <u>Second</u>     |                   |                 |                    |                  | <u>Third</u>    |                   |
|----|------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|------------------|-----------------|-------------------|
|    | <i>rosa, f.</i>        | <i>oculus, m.</i> | <i>filius, m.</i> | <i>puer, m.</i> | <i>ager, m.</i>    | <i>dōnum, n.</i> | <i>rēx, m.</i>  | <i>corpus, n.</i> |
| N  | rosa                   | oculus            | filius            | puer            | ager               | dōnum            | rēx             | corpus            |
| G  | rosae                  | oculī             | filiī             | puerī           | agrī               | dōnī             | rēgis           | corporis          |
| D  | rosae                  | oculō             | filiō             | puerō           | agrō               | dōnō             | rēgi            | corporī           |
| A  | rosam                  | oculum            | filium            | puerum          | agrum              | dōnum            | rēgem           | corpus            |
| Ab | rosā                   | oculō             | filiō             | puerō           | agrō               | dōnō             | rēge            | corpore           |
| V  | rosa                   | ocule             | fili              | puer            | ager               | dōnum            | rēx             | corpus            |
|    |                        |                   |                   |                 |                    |                  |                 |                   |
| N  | rosae                  | oculī             | filiī             | puerī           | agrī               | dōna             | rēgēs           | corpora           |
| G  | rosārum                | oculōrum          | filiōrum          | puerōrum        | agrōrum            | dōnōrum          | rēgum           | corporum          |
| D  | rosīs                  | oculis            | filiīs            | puerīs          | agrīs              | dōnīs            | rēgibus         | corporibus        |
| A  | rosās                  | oculōs            | filiōs            | puerōs          | agrōs              | dōna             | rēgēs           | corpora           |
| Ab | rosīs                  | oculis            | filiīs            | puerīs          | agrīs              | dōnīs            | rēgibus         | corporibus        |
| V  | rosae                  | oculī             | filiī             | puerī           | agrī               | dōna             | rēgēs           | corpora           |
|    |                        |                   |                   |                 |                    |                  |                 |                   |
|    | <u>Third (i-stems)</u> |                   |                   | <u>Fourth</u>   |                    | <u>Fifth</u>     |                 |                   |
|    | <i>cīvis, m./f.</i>    | <i>urbs, f.</i>   | <i>mare, n.</i>   | <i>vīs, f.</i>  | <i>fructus, m.</i> | <i>cornū, n.</i> | <i>diēs, m.</i> | <i>rēs, f.</i>    |
| N  | cīvis                  | urbs              | mare              | vīs             | fructus            | cornū            | diēs            | rēs               |
| G  | cīvis                  | urbis             | maris             | (vīs)           | fructūs            | cornūs           | diēi            | rei               |
| D  | cīvī                   | urbī              | marī              | (vī)            | fructuī            | cornū            | diēi            | rei               |
| A  | cīvem                  | urbem             | mare              | vim             | fructum            | cornū            | diem            | rem               |
| Ab | cīve                   | urbe              | marī              | vī              | fructū             | cornū            | diē             | rē                |
| V  | cīvis                  | urbs              | mare              | (vīs)           | fructus            | cornū            | diēs            | rēs               |
|    |                        |                   |                   |                 |                    |                  |                 |                   |
| N  | cīvēs                  | urbēs             | maria             | vīres           | fructūs            | cornua           | diēs            | rēs               |
| G  | cīvium                 | urbium            | marium            | vīrium          | fructuum           | cornuum          | diērum          | rērum             |
| D  | cīvibus                | urbibus           | maribus           | vīribus         | fructibus          | cornibus         | diēbus          | rēbus             |
| A  | cīvēs                  | urbēs             | maria             | vīres           | fructūs            | cornua           | diēs            | rēs               |
| Ab | cīvibus                | urbibus           | maribus           | vīribus         | fructibus          | cornibus         | diēbus          | rēbus             |
| V  | cīvēs                  | urbēs             | maria             | vīres           | fructūs            | cornua           | diēs            | rēs               |



## Adjectives

### Adjectives of the first and second declensions

| Adjectives in -us, -a, -um |          |          |          | Adjectives in -er |           |           |
|----------------------------|----------|----------|----------|-------------------|-----------|-----------|
|                            | M        | F        | N        | M                 | F         | N         |
| N                          | magnus   | magna    | magnum   | liber             | libera    | liberum   |
| G                          | magnī    | magnae   | magnī    | liberī            | liberae   | liberī    |
| D                          | magnō    | magnae   | magnō    | liberō            | liberae   | liberō    |
| A                          | magnum   | magnam   | magnum   | liberum           | liberam   | liberum   |
| Ab                         | magnō    | magnā    | magnō    | liberō            | liberā    | liberō    |
| V                          | magne    | magna    | magnum   | liber             | libera    | liberum   |
|                            |          |          |          |                   |           |           |
| N                          | magnī    | magnae   | magna    | liberī            | liberae   | libera    |
| G                          | magnōrum | magnārum | magnōrum | liberōrum         | liberārum | liberōrum |
| D                          | magnīs   | magnīs   | magnīs   | liberīs           | liberīs   | liberīs   |
| A                          | magnōs   | magnās   | magna    | liberōs           | liberās   | libera    |
| Ab                         | magnīs   | magnīs   | magnīs   | liberīs           | liberīs   | liberīs   |
| V                          | magnī    | magnae   | magna    | liberī            | liberae   | libera    |

### Adjectives of the third declension

|    | 3 endings     |               |           | 2 endings    |          | 1 ending     |              |
|----|---------------|---------------|-----------|--------------|----------|--------------|--------------|
|    | M             | F             | N         | M&F          | N        | M&F          | N            |
| N  | celer         | celeris       | celere    | fortis       | forte    | potēns       | potēns       |
| G  | celeris       | celeris       | celeris   | fortis       | fortis   | potentis     | potentis     |
| D  | celerī        | celerī        | celerī    | fortī        | fortī    | potentī      | potentī      |
| A  | celerem       | celerem       | celere    | fortem       | forte    | potentem     | potēns       |
| Ab | celerī        | celerī        | celerī    | fortī        | fortī    | potentī (-e) | potentī (-e) |
|    |               |               |           |              |          |              |              |
| N  | celerēs       | celerēs       | celeria   | fortēs       | fortia   | potentēs     | potentia     |
| G  | celerium      | celerium      | celerium  | fortium      | fortium  | potentium    | potentium    |
| D  | celeribus     | celeribus     | celeribus | fortibus     | fortibus | potentibus   | potentibus   |
| A  | celerēs (-is) | celerēs (-is) | celeria   | fortēs (-is) | fortia   | potentēs     | potentia     |
| Ab | celeribus     | celeribus     | celeribus | fortibus     | fortibus | potentibus   | potentibus   |

**Pronouns****Demonstrative**

|    | M     | F     | N     | M       | F       | N       |
|----|-------|-------|-------|---------|---------|---------|
| N  | hīc   | haec  | hōc   | ille    | illa    | illud   |
| G  | huius | huius | huius | illius  | illius  | illius  |
| D  | huic  | huic  | huic  | illī    | illī    | illī    |
| A  | hunc  | hanc  | hōc   | illum   | illam   | illud   |
| Ab | hōc   | hāc   | hōc   | illō    | illā    | illō    |
| N  | hī    | hae   | haec  | illī    | illae   | illa    |
| G  | hōrum | hārum | hōrum | illōrum | illārum | illōrum |
| D  | hīs   | hīs   | hīs   | illīs   | illīs   | illīs   |
| A  | hōs   | hās   | haec  | illōs   | illās   | illa    |
| Ab | hīs   | hīs   | hīs   | illīs   | illīs   | illīs   |

**Personal pronoun (3rd)**

| M | F | N |
|---|---|---|
|---|---|---|

**īdem**

| M | F | N |
|---|---|---|
|---|---|---|

**Interrogative pronoun****Relative pronoun****Intensive pronoun****quis, who?****quī, quae, quod, who, which****ipse, -self, the very**

|    | M      | F      | N      | M      | F      | N      | M       | F       | N       |
|----|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| N  | quis   | quis   | quid   | quī    | quae   | quod   | ipse    | ipsa    | ipsum   |
| G  | cuius  | cuius  | cuius  | cuius  | cuius  | cuius  | ipsius  | ipsius  | ipsius  |
| D  | cui    | cui    | cui    | cui    | cui    | cui    | ipsī    | ipsī    | ipsī    |
| A  | quem   | quem   | quid   | quem   | quam   | quod   | ipsum   | ipsam   | ipsum   |
| Ab | quō    | quō    | quō    | quō    | quā    | quō    | ipsō    | ipsā    | ipsō    |
| N  | quī    | quae   | quae   | quī    | quae   | quae   | ipsī    | ipsae   | ipsa    |
| G  | quōrum | quārum | quōrum | quōrum | quārum | quōrum | ipsōrum | ipsārum | ipsōrum |
| D  | quibus | quibus | quibus | quibus | quibus | quibus | ipsīs   | ipsīs   | ipsīs   |
| A  | quōs   | quās   | quae   | quōs   | quās   | quae   | ipsōs   | ipsās   | ipsa    |
| Ab | quibus | quibus | quibus | quibus | quibus | quibus | ipsīs   | ipsīs   | ipsīs   |

|    |           |              |       |                    |                       |          |
|----|-----------|--------------|-------|--------------------|-----------------------|----------|
| N  | is        | ea           | id    | īdem               | eadem                 | idem     |
| G  | eius      | eius         | eius  | eiusdem            | eiusdem               | eiusdem  |
| D  | eī        | eī           | eī    | eīdem              | eīdem                 | eīdem    |
| A  | eum       | eam          | id    | eundem             | eandem                | idem     |
| Ab | eō        | eā           | eō    | eōdem              | eādem                 | eōdem    |
| N  | eī, iī, ī | eae          | ea    | eīdem, iīdem, īdem | eaedem                | eadem    |
| G  | eōrum     | eārum        | eōrum | eōrundem           | eārundem              | eōrundem |
| D  |           | eīs, iīs, īs |       |                    | eīsdem, iīsdem, īsdem |          |
| A  | eōs       | eās          | ea    | eōsdem             | eāsdem                | eadem    |
| Ab |           | eīs, iīs, īs |       |                    | eīsdem, iīsdem, īsdem |          |

### Adjectives with genitives in -īus

|    | M       | F       | N       |
|----|---------|---------|---------|
| N  | tōtus   | tōta    | tōtum   |
| G  | tōtīus  | tōtīus  | tōtīus  |
| D  | tōtī    | tōtī    | tōtī    |
| A  | tōtum   | tōtam   | tōtum   |
| Ab | tōtō    | tōtā    | tōtō    |
| N  | tōtī    | tōtae   | tōta    |
| G  | tōtōrum | tōtārum | tōtōrum |
| D  | tōtīs   | tōtīs   | tōtīs   |
| A  | tōtōs   | tōtās   | tōta    |
| Ab | tōtis   | tōtis   | tōtis   |

### Personal pronouns (1st & 2nd pers.)

| <i>I</i>            | <i>you</i>          | <i>himself (etc)</i> |
|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| ego                 | tū                  | --                   |
| meī                 | tuī                 | suī                  |
| mihi (mī)           | tibi                | sibi                 |
| mē                  | tē                  | sē, sēsē             |
| mē                  | tē                  | sē, sēsē             |
| we                  | you                 | themselves           |
| nōs                 | vōs                 | --                   |
| { nostrum<br>nostrī | { vestrum<br>vestrī | suī                  |
| nōbīs               | vōbīs               | sibi                 |
| nōs                 | vōs                 | sē, sēsē             |
| nōbīs               | vōbīs               | sē, sēsē             |

**Conjugations 1-4 (Active indicative)****Present**

|          |         |          |         |         |
|----------|---------|----------|---------|---------|
| laudō    | habēō   | vincō    | capiō   | audiō   |
| laudās   | habēs   | vincis   | capis   | audīs   |
| laudat   | habet   | vincit   | capit   | audit   |
| laudāmus | habēmus | vincimus | capimus | audīmus |
| laudātis | habētis | vincitis | capitis | audītis |
| laudant  | habent  | vincunt  | capiunt | audiunt |

**Imperfect**

|            |           |            |            |            |
|------------|-----------|------------|------------|------------|
| laudābam   | habēbam   | vincēbam   | capiēbam   | audiēbam   |
| laudābās   | habēbās   | vincēbās   | capiēbās   | audiēbās   |
| laudābat   | habēbat   | vincēbat   | capiēbat   | audiēbat   |
| laudābāmus | habēbāmus | vincēbāmus | capiēbāmus | audiēbāmus |
| laudābātis | habēbātis | vincēbātis | capiēbātis | audiēbātis |
| laudābant  | habēbant  | vincēbant  | capiēbant  | audiēbant  |

**Future**

|            |           |          |          |          |
|------------|-----------|----------|----------|----------|
| laudābō    | habēbō    | vincam   | capiam   | audiam   |
| laudābis   | habēbis   | vincēs   | capies   | audies   |
| laudābit   | habēbit   | vincet   | capiet   | audiet   |
| laudābimus | habēbimus | vincēmus | capiemus | audiemus |
| laudābitis | habēbitis | vincētis | capietis | audietis |
| laudābunt  | habēbunt  | vincent  | capient  | audient  |

**Perfect**

|                    |                  |                 |                 |                   |
|--------------------|------------------|-----------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| laudāvī            | habuī            | vīcī            | cēpī            | audīvī            |
| laudāvistī         | habuistī         | vīcistī         | cēpistī         | audīvistī         |
| laudāvit           | habuit           | vīcit           | cēpit           | audīvit           |
| laudāvimus         | habuimus         | vīcimus         | cēpimus         | audīvimus         |
| laudāvistis        | habuistis        | vīcistis        | cēpistis        | audīvistis        |
| laudāvērunt (-ēre) | habuērunt (-ēre) | vīcērunt (-ēre) | cēpērunt (-ēre) | audīvērunt (-ēre) |

**Pluperfect**

|              |            |           |           |             |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| laudāveram   | habueram   | vīceram   | cēperam   | audīveram   |
| laudāverās   | habuerās   | vīcerās   | cēperās   | audīverās   |
| laudāverat   | habuerat   | vīcerat   | cēperat   | audīverat   |
| laudāverāmus | habuerāmus | vīcerāmus | cēperāmus | audīverāmus |
| laudāverātis | habuerātis | vīcerātis | cēperātis | audīverātis |
| laudāverant  | habuerant  | vīcerant  | cēperant  | audīverant  |

**Future perfect**

|              |            |           |           |             |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| laudāverō    | habuerō    | vīcerō    | cēperō    | audīverō    |
| laudāverīs   | habuerīs   | vīcerīs   | cēperīs   | audīverīs   |
| laudāverit   | habuerit   | vīcerit   | cēperit   | audīverit   |
| laudāverīmus | habuerīmus | vīcerīmus | cēperīmus | audīverīmus |
| laudāverītis | habuerītis | vīcerītis | cēperītis | audīverītis |
| laudāverint  | habuerint  | vīcerint  | cēperint  | audīverint  |

**Imperatives**

|         |        |         |        |        |
|---------|--------|---------|--------|--------|
| laudā   | habē   | vince   | cape   | audi   |
| laudāte | habēte | vincite | capite | audite |

**Infinitives**

|                 |                |               |               |                |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| laudāre         | habēre         | vincere       | capere        | audire         |
| laudāvisse      | habuisse       | vīcisse       | cēpisse       | audīvisse      |
| laudātūrum esse | habitūrum esse | victūrum esse | captūrum esse | audītūrum esse |

**Conjugations 1-4 (Active Subjunctive)****Present**

|          |          |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| laudem   | habeam   | vincam   | capiam   | audiam   |
| laudēs   | habeās   | vincās   | capiās   | audiās   |
| laudet   | habeat   | vincat   | capiat   | audiat   |
| laudēmus | habeāmus | vincāmus | capiāmus | audiāmus |
| laudētis | habeātis | vincātis | capiātis | audiātis |
| laudent  | habeant  | vincant  | capiant  | audiant  |

**Imperfect**

|            |           |            |           |           |
|------------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| laudārem   | habērem   | vincerem   | caperem   | audīrem   |
| laudārēs   | habērēs   | vincerēs   | caperēs   | audīrēs   |
| laudāret   | habēret   | vinceret   | caperet   | audīret   |
| laudārēmus | habērēmus | vincerēmus | caperēmus | audīrēmus |
| laudārētis | habērētis | vincerētis | caperētis | audīrētis |
| laudārent  | habērent  | vincerent  | caperent  | audīrent  |

**Perfect**

|              |            |           |           |             |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------|-------------|
| laudāverim   | habuerim   | vīcerim   | cēperim   | audīverim   |
| laudāverīs   | habuerīs   | vīcerīs   | cēperīs   | audīverīs   |
| laudāverit   | habuerit   | vīcerit   | cēperit   | audīverit   |
| laudāverīmus | habuerīmus | vīcerīmus | cēperīmus | audīverīmus |
| laudāverītis | habuerītis | vīcerītis | cēperītis | audīverītis |
| laudāverint  | habuerint  | vīcerint  | cēperint  | audīverint  |

**Pluperfect**

|               |             |            |            |              |
|---------------|-------------|------------|------------|--------------|
| laudāvissem   | habuissem   | vīcissem   | cēpissem   | audīvissem   |
| laudāvissēs   | habuissēs   | vīcissēs   | cēpissēs   | audīvissēs   |
| laudāvisset   | habuisset   | vīcisset   | cēpisset   | audīvisset   |
| laudāvissēmus | habuissēmus | vīcissēmus | cēpissēmus | audīvissēmus |
| laudāvissētis | habuissētis | vīcissētis | cēpissētis | audīvissētis |
| laudāvissent  | habuissent  | vīcissent  | cēpissent  | audīvissent  |

**Conjugations 1-4 (Passive indicative)****Present**

|                |               |                |               |               |
|----------------|---------------|----------------|---------------|---------------|
| laudor         | habeor        | vincor         | capior        | audior        |
| laudāris (-re) | habēris (-re) | vinceris (-re) | caperis (-re) | audiris (-re) |
| laudātur       | habētur       | vincitur       | capitur       | auditur       |
| laudāmur       | habēmur       | vincimur       | capimur       | audimur       |
| laudāminī      | habēminī      | vincimīnī      | capimīnī      | audimīnī      |
| laudantur      | habentur      | vincuntur      | capiuntur     | audiuntur     |

**Imperfect**

|                  |                 |                  |                  |                  |
|------------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|------------------|
| laudābar         | habēbar         | vincēbar         | capiēbar         | audiēbar         |
| laudābāris (-re) | habēbāris (-re) | vincēbāris (-re) | capiēbāris (-re) | audiēbāris (-re) |
| laudābātur       | habēbātur       | vincēbātur       | capiēbātur       | audiēbātur       |
| laudābāmur       | habēbāmur       | vincēbāmur       | capiēbāmur       | audiēbāmur       |
| laudābāminī      | habēbāminī      | vincēbāminī      | capiēbāminī      | audiēbāminī      |
| laudābantur      | habēbantur      | vincēbantur      | capiēbantur      | audiēbantur      |

**Future**

|                  |                 |                |                |                |
|------------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|
| laudābor         | habēbor         | vincar         | capiar         | audiar         |
| laudāberis (-re) | habēberis (-re) | vincēris (-re) | capiēris (-re) | audiēris (-re) |
| laudābitur       | habēbitur       | vincētur       | capiētur       | audiētur       |
| laudābimur       | habēbimur       | vincēmur       | capiēmur       | audiēmur       |
| laudābimīnī      | habēbimīnī      | vincēminī      | capiēminī      | audiēminī      |
| laudābuntur      | habēbuntur      | vincentur      | capientur      | audientur      |

**Perfect**

|               |              |             |             |              |
|---------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| laudātus sum  | habitus sum  | victus sum  | captus sum  | audītus sum  |
| laudātus es   | habitus es   | victus es   | captus es   | audītus es   |
| laudātus est  | habitus est  | victus est  | captus est  | audītus est  |
| laudātī sumus | habītī sumus | victī sumus | captī sumus | audītī sumus |
| laudātī estis | habītī estis | victī estis | captī estis | audītī estis |
| laudātī sunt  | habītī sunt  | victī sunt  | captī sunt  | audītī sunt  |

**Pluperfect**

|                |               |              |              |               |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| laudātus eram  | habitus eram  | victus eram  | captus eram  | audītus eram  |
| laudātus erās  | habitus erās  | victus erās  | captus erās  | audītus erās  |
| laudātus erat  | habitus erat  | victus erat  | captus erat  | audītus erat  |
| laudātī erāmus | habītī erāmus | victī erāmus | captī erāmus | audītī erāmus |
| laudātī erātis | habītī erātis | victī erātis | captī erātis | audītī erātis |
| laudātī erant  | habītī erant  | victī erant  | captī erant  | audītī erant  |

**Future perfect**

|                |               |              |              |               |
|----------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| laudātus erō   | habitus erō   | victus erō   | captus erō   | audītus erō   |
| laudātus eris  | habitus eris  | victus eris  | captus eris  | audītus eris  |
| laudātus erit  | habitus erit  | victus erit  | captus erit  | audītus erit  |
| laudātī erimus | habītī erimus | victī erimus | captī erimus | audītī erimus |
| laudātī eritis | habītī eritis | victī eritis | captī eritis | audītī eritis |
| laudātī erunt  | habītī erunt  | victī erunt  | captī erunt  | audītī erunt  |

**Imperatives**

|                                 |                               |                             |                            |                               |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| laudāre<br>laudāminī            | habēre<br>habēminī            | vincere<br>vinciminī        | capere<br>capiminī         | audire<br>audiminī            |
| <b>Infinitives</b>              |                               |                             |                            |                               |
| laudārī<br>laudātus -a -um esse | habērī<br>habitus -a -um esse | vincī<br>victus -a -um esse | capī<br>captus -a -um esse | audīrī<br>audītus -a -um esse |

## Conjugations 1-4 (Passive Subjunctive)

### Present

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| lauder<br>laudēris (-re)<br>laudētur<br>laudēmur<br>laudēminī<br>laudentur | habear<br>habeāris (-re)<br>habeātur<br>habeāmur<br>habeāminī<br>habeantur | vincar<br>vincāris (-re)<br>vincātur<br>vincāmur<br>vincāminī<br>vincantur | capiar<br>capiāris (-re)<br>capiātur<br>capiāmur<br>capiāminī<br>capiantur | audiar<br>audiāris (-re)<br>audiātur<br>audiāmur<br>audiāminī<br>audiantur |
|--|--|--|--|--|

### Imperfect

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| laudārer<br>laudārēris (-re)<br>laudārētur<br>laudārēmur<br>laudārēminī<br>laudārēntur | habērer<br>habērēris (-re)<br>habērētur<br>habērēmur<br>habērēminī<br>habērēntur | vincerer<br>vincērēris (-re)<br>vincērētur<br>vincērēmur<br>vincērēminī<br>vincērēntur | caperer<br>caperēris (-re)<br>caperētur<br>caperēmur<br>caperēminī<br>caperēntur | audīrer<br>audīrēris (-re)<br>audīrētur<br>audīrēmur<br>audīrēminī<br>audīrēntur |
|--|--|--|--|--|

### Perfect

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| laudātus sim<br>laudātus sīs<br>laudātus sit<br>laudātī sīmus<br>laudātī sītis<br>laudātī sint | habitus sim<br>habitus sīs<br>habitus sit<br>habitī sīmus<br>habitī sītis<br>habitī sint | victus sim<br>victus sīs<br>victus sit<br>victī sīmus<br>victī sītis<br>victī sint | captus sim<br>captus sīs<br>captus sit<br>captī sīmus<br>captī sītis<br>captī sint | audītus sim<br>audītus sīs<br>audītus sit<br>audītī sīmus<br>audītī sītis<br>audītī sint |
|--|--|--|--|--|

### Pluperfect

|  |  |  |  |  |
|--|--|--|--|--|
| laudātus essem<br>laudātus essēs<br>laudātus esset<br>laudātī essēmus<br>laudātī essētis<br>laudātī essent | habitus essem<br>habitus essēs<br>habitus esset<br>habitī essēmus<br>habitī essētis<br>habitī essent | victus essem<br>victus essēs<br>victus esset<br>victī essēmus<br>victī essētis<br>victī essent | captus essem<br>captus essēs<br>captus esset<br>captī essēmus<br>captī essētis<br>captī essent | audītus essem<br>audītus essēs<br>audītus esset<br>audītī essēmus<br>audītī essētis<br>audītī essent |
|--|--|--|--|--|

**Conjugations 1-4 (Deponent indicative)****Present**

|               |               |                |                |              |
|---------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| cōnor         | vereor        | loquor         | morior         | orior        |
| cōnāris (-re) | verēris (-re) | loqueris (-re) | moriēris (-re) | orīris (-re) |
| cōnātur       | verētur       | loquitur       | moritur        | oritur       |
| cōnāmur       | verēmur       | loquimur       | morimur        | orīmur       |
| cōnāminī      | verēminī      | loquiminī      | moriminī       | orīminī      |
| cōnantur      | verentur      | loquuntur      | moriuntur      | oriuntur     |

**Imperfect**

|                 |                 |                  |                  |                 |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|------------------|-----------------|
| cōnābar         | verēbar         | loquēbar         | moriēbar         | oriēbar         |
| cōnābāris (-re) | verēbāris (-re) | loquēbāris (-re) | moriēbāris (-re) | oriēbāris (-re) |
| cōnābātur       | verēbātur       | loquēbātur       | moriēbātur       | oriēbātur       |
| cōnābāmur       | verēbāmur       | loquēbāmur       | moriēbāmur       | oriēbāmur       |
| cōnābāminī      | verēbāminī      | loquēbāminī      | moriēbāminī      | oriēbāminī      |
| cōnābantur      | verēbantur      | loquēbantur      | moriēbantur      | oriēbantur      |

**Future**

|                 |                 |                |                |               |
|-----------------|-----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| cōnābor         | verēbor         | loquar         | moriar         | oriar         |
| cōnāberis (-re) | verēberis (-re) | loquēris (-re) | moriēris (-re) | oriēris (-re) |
| cōnābitur       | verēbitur       | loquētur       | moriētur       | oriētur       |
| cōnābimur       | verēbimur       | loquēmur       | moriēmur       | oriēmur       |
| cōnābiminī      | verēbiminī      | loquēminī      | moriēminī      | oriēminī      |
| cōnābuntur      | verēbuntur      | loquentur      | morientur      | orientur      |

**Perfect**

|              |              |              |              |            |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| cōnātus sum  | veritus sum  | locūtus sum  | mortuus sum  | ortus sum  |
| cōnātus es   | veritus es   | locūtus es   | mortuus es   | ortus es   |
| cōnātus est  | veritus est  | locūtus est  | mortuus est  | ortus est  |
| cōnātī sumus | veritī sumus | locūtī sumus | mortuī sumus | ortī sumus |
| cōnātī estis | veritī estis | locūtī estis | mortuī estis | ortī estis |
| cōnātī sunt  | veritī sunt  | locūtī sunt  | mortuī sunt  | ortī sunt  |

**Pluperfect**

|               |               |               |               |             |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| cōnātus eram  | veritus eram  | locūtus eram  | mortuus eram  | ortus eram  |
| cōnātus erās  | veritus erās  | locūtus erās  | mortuus erās  | ortus erās  |
| cōnātus erat  | veritus erat  | locūtus erat  | mortuus erat  | ortus erat  |
| cōnātī erāmus | veritī erāmus | locūtī erāmus | mortuī erāmus | ortī erāmus |
| cōnātī erātis | veritī erātis | locūtī erātis | mortuī erātis | ortī erātis |
| cōnātī erant  | veritī erant  | locūtī erant  | mortuī erant  | ortī erant  |

**Future perfect**

|               |               |               |               |             |
|---------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|-------------|
| cōnātus erō   | veritus erō   | locūtus erō   | mortuus erō   | ortus erō   |
| cōnātus eris  | veritus eris  | locūtus eris  | mortuus eris  | ortus eris  |
| cōnātus erit  | veritus erit  | locūtus erit  | mortuus erit  | ortus erit  |
| cōnātī erimus | veritī erimus | locūtī erimus | mortuī erimus | ortī erimus |
| cōnātī eritis | veritī eritis | locūtī eritis | mortuī eritis | ortī eritis |
| cōnātī erunt  | veritī erunt  | locūtī erunt  | mortuī erunt  | ortī erunt  |

**Imperatives**



|                     |                     |                     |                     |                   |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|-------------------|
| cōnāre              | verēre              | loquere             | moriere             | orīre             |
| cōnāminī            | verēminī            | loquiminī           | moriminī            | orīminī           |
| <b>Infinitives</b>  |                     |                     |                     |                   |
| cōnārī              | verērī              | loquī               | morī                | orīrī             |
| cōnātus -a -um esse | verītus -a -um esse | locūtus -a -um esse | mortuus -a -um esse | ortus -a -um esse |

## Conjugations 1-4 (Deponent Subjunctive)

### Present

|               |                |                |                |               |
|---------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| cōner         | verear         | loquar         | moriar         | oriar         |
| cōnēris (-re) | verēāris (-re) | loquāris (-re) | moriāris (-re) | oriāris (-re) |
| cōnētur       | verēātur       | loquātur       | moriātur       | oriātur       |
| cōnēmur       | verēāmur       | loquāmur       | moriāmur       | oriāmur       |
| cōnēminī      | verēāminī      | loquāminī      | moriāminī      | oriāminī      |
| cōnentur      | verēantur      | loquantur      | morianur       | oriantur      |

### Imperfect

|                 |                 |                  |                 |                |
|-----------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------------|----------------|
| cōnārer         | verērer         | loquerer         | morerer         | orīrer         |
| cōnārēris (-re) | verērēris (-re) | loquērēris (-re) | morerēris (-re) | orīrēris (-re) |
| cōnārētur       | verērētur       | loquērētur       | morerētur       | orīrētur       |
| cōnārēmur       | verērēmur       | loquērēmur       | morerēmur       | orīrēmur       |
| cōnārēminī      | verērēminī      | loquērēminī      | morerēminī      | orīrēminī      |
| cōnārēntur      | verērēntur      | loquērēntur      | morerēntur      | orīrēntur      |

### Perfect

|              |              |              |              |            |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|------------|
| cōnātus sim  | verītus sim  | locūtus sim  | mortuus sim  | ortus sim  |
| cōnātus sis  | verītus sis  | locūtus sis  | mortuus sis  | ortus sis  |
| cōnātus sit  | verītus sit  | locūtus sit  | mortuus sit  | ortus sit  |
| cōnātī simus | verītī simus | locūtī simus | mortuī simus | ortī simus |
| cōnātī sitis | verītī sitis | locūtī sitis | mortuī sitis | ortī sitis |
| cōnātī sint  | verītī sint  | locūtī sint  | mortuī sint  | ortī sint  |

### Pluperfect

|                |                |                |                |              |
|----------------|----------------|----------------|----------------|--------------|
| cōnātus essem  | verītus essem  | locūtus essem  | mortuus essem  | ortus essem  |
| cōnātus essēs  | verītus essēs  | locūtus essēs  | mortuus essēs  | ortus essēs  |
| cōnātus esset  | verītus esset  | locūtus esset  | mortuus esset  | ortus esset  |
| cōnātī essēmus | verītī essēmus | locūtī essēmus | mortuī essēmus | ortī essēmus |
| cōnātī essētis | verītī essētis | locūtī essētis | mortuī essētis | ortī essētis |
| cōnātī essent  | verītī essent  | locūtī essent  | mortuī essent  | ortī essent  |

**Irregular Verbs (Indicative)****Present**

|       |          |      |       |         |            |          |
|-------|----------|------|-------|---------|------------|----------|
| sum   | possum   | eō   | fiō   | volō    | nōlō       | mālō     |
| es    | potes    | īs   | fīs   | vīs     | nōn vīs    | māvis    |
| est   | potest   | it   | fit   | vult    | nōn vult   | māvult   |
| sumus | possumus | īmus | fīmus | volumus | nōlumus    | mālumus  |
| estis | potestis | ītis | fītis | vultis  | nōn vultis | māvultis |
| sunt  | possunt  | eunt | fiunt | volunt  | nōlunt     | mālunt   |

**Imperfect**

|        |           |        |          |           |           |           |
|--------|-----------|--------|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| eram   | poteram   | ībam   | fiēbam   | volēbam   | nōlēbam   | mālēbam   |
| erās   | poterās   | ībās   | fiēbās   | volēbās   | nōlēbās   | mālēbās   |
| erat   | poterat   | ībat   | fiēbat   | volēbat   | nōlēbat   | mālēbat   |
| erāmus | poterāmus | ībāmus | fiēbāmus | volēbāmus | nōlēbāmus | mālēbāmus |
| erātis | poterātis | ībātis | fiēbātis | volēbātis | nōlēbātis | mālēbātis |
| erant  | poterant  | ībant  | fiēbant  | volēbant  | nōlēbant  | mālēbant  |

**Future**

|        |           |        |        |         |         |         |
|--------|-----------|--------|--------|---------|---------|---------|
| erō    | poterō    | ībō    | fīam   | volam   | nōlam   | mālam   |
| eris   | poteris   | ībīs   | fīēs   | volēs   | nōlēs   | mālēs   |
| erit   | poterit   | ībit   | fīet   | volet   | nōlet   | mālet   |
| erimus | poterimus | ībimus | fīēmus | volēmus | nōlēmus | mālēmus |
| eritis | poteritis | ībītis | fīētis | volētis | nōlētis | mālētis |
| erunt  | poterunt  | ībunt  | fīent  | volent  | nōlent  | mālent  |

**Perfect**

|         |           |                   |             |           |           |           |
|---------|-----------|-------------------|-------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| fuī     | potuī     | īi (īvī)          | factus sum  | voluī     | nōluī     | māluī     |
| fuistī  | potuistī  | īstī (īvistī)     | factus es   | voluistī  | nōluistī  | māluistī  |
| fuit    | potuit    | īit (īvit)        | factus est  | voluit    | nōluit    | māluit    |
| fuius   | potuimus  | iimus (ivimus)    | factī sumus | voluimus  | nōluimus  | māluimus  |
| fuistis | potuistis | īstis (īvistis)   | factī estis | voluistis | nōluistis | māluistis |
| fuērunt | potuērunt | iērunt (īviērunt) | factī sunt  | voluērunt | nōluērunt | māluērunt |

**Pluperfect**

|          |            |                    |              |            |            |            |
|----------|------------|--------------------|--------------|------------|------------|------------|
| fueram   | potueram   | ieram (īveram)     | factus eram  | volueram   | nōlueram   | mālueram   |
| fuerās   | potuerās   | ierās (īverās)     | factus erās  | voluerās   | nōluerās   | māluerās   |
| fuerat   | potuerat   | ierat (īverat)     | factus erat  | voluerat   | nōluerat   | māluerat   |
| fuerāmus | potuerāmus | ierāmus (īver-)    | factī erāmus | voluerāmus | nōluerāmus | māluerāmus |
| fuerātis | potuerātis | ierātis (īverātis) | factī erātis | voluerātis | nōluerātis | māluerātis |
| fuerant  | potuerant  | ierant (īverant)   | factī erant  | voluerant  | nōluerant  | māluerant  |

**Future perfect**

|          |            |                    |              |            |            |            |
|----------|------------|--------------------|--------------|------------|------------|------------|
| fuērō    | potuerō    | ierō (īverō)       | factus erō   | voluerō    | nōluerō    | māluerō    |
| fueris   | potueris   | ieris (īveris)     | factus eris  | volueris   | nōlueris   | mālueris   |
| fuerit   | potuerit   | ierit (īverit)     | factus erit  | voluerit   | nōluerit   | māluerit   |
| fuerimus | potuerimus | ierimus (īver-)    | factī erimus | voluerimus | nōluerimus | māluerimus |
| fueritis | potueritis | ieritis (īveritis) | factī eritis | volueritis | nōlueritis | mālueritis |
| fuerint  | potuerint  | ierint (īverint)   | factī erunt  | voluerint  | nōluerint  | māluerint  |

**Imperatives**

|      |     |      |   |        |
|------|-----|------|---|--------|
| es   | ī   | fi   | — | nōli   |
| este | īte | fite | — | nōlite |

**Infinitives**

|        |          |      |       |          |          |          |
|--------|----------|------|-------|----------|----------|----------|
| esse   | posse    | īre  | fiērī | velle    | nōlle    | mālle    |
| fuisse | potuisse | īsse |       | voluisse | nōluisse | māluisse |

**Irregular Verbs (Subjunctive)****Present Subjunctive**

|             |              |            |              |              |              |              |
|-------------|--------------|------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| <i>esse</i> | <i>posse</i> | <i>īre</i> | <i>fiērī</i> | <i>velle</i> | <i>nōlle</i> | <i>mālle</i> |
| sim         | possim       | eam        | fīam         | velim        | nōlim        | mālim        |
| sīs         | possīs       | eās        | fīās         | velīs        | nōlis        | mālis        |
| sit         | possit       | eat        | fīat         | velit        | nōlit        | mālit        |
| sīmus       | possīmus     | eāmus      | fīāmus       | velīmus      | nōlimus      | mālimus      |
| sītis       | possītis     | eātis      | fīātis       | velītis      | nōlitis      | mālitis      |
| sint        | possint      | eant       | fīant        | velint       | nōlint       | mālint       |

**Imperfect Subjunctive**

|         |          |        |          |          |          |          |
|---------|----------|--------|----------|----------|----------|----------|
| essem   | possem   | īrem   | fierem   | vellem   | nōllem   | māllem   |
| essēs   | possēs   | īrēs   | fierēs   | vellēs   | nōllēs   | māllēs   |
| esset   | posset   | īret   | fieret   | vellet   | nōllet   | māllet   |
| essēmus | possēmus | īrēmus | fierēmus | vellēmus | nōllēmus | māllēmus |
| essētis | possētis | īrētis | fierētis | vellētis | nōllētis | māllētis |
| essent  | possent  | īrent  | fierent  | vellent  | nōllent  | māllent  |

**Perfect Subjunctive**

|          |            |         |             |            |            |            |
|----------|------------|---------|-------------|------------|------------|------------|
| fuerim   | potuerim   | ierim   | factus sim  | voluerim   | nōluerim   | māluerim   |
| fuerīs   | potuerīs   | ierīs   | factus sīs  | voluerīs   | nōluerīs   | māluerīs   |
| fuerit   | potuerit   | ierit   | factus sit  | voluerit   | nōluerit   | māluerit   |
| fuerīmus | potuerīmus | ierīmus | factī sīmus | voluerīmus | nōluerīmus | māluerīmus |
| fuerītis | potuerītis | ierītis | factī sītis | voluerītis | nōluerītis | māluerītis |
| fuerint  | potuerint  | ierint  | factī sint  | voluerint  | nōluerint  | māluerint  |

**Pluperfect Subjunctive**

|            |              |         |               |              |              |              |
|------------|--------------|---------|---------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| fuissem    | potuissem    | īsem    | factus essem  | voluissem    | nōluissem    | māluissem    |
| fuisēs     | potuisēs     | īssēs   | factus essēs  | voluisēs     | nōluisēs     | māluisēs     |
| fuisset    | potuisset    | īssēt   | factus esset  | voluisset    | nōluisset    | māluisset    |
| fuissemus  | potuissemus  | īssēmus | factī essēmus | voluissemus  | nōluissemus  | māluissemus  |
| fuissetis  | potuissetis  | īssētis | factī essētis | voluissetis  | nōluissetis  | māluissetis  |
| fuisissent | potuisissent | īssent  | factī essent  | voluisissent | nōluisissent | māluisissent |

**Participles**

|    | <u>1st conjugation</u>         |               | <u>2nd conjugation</u> |               | <u>3rd conjugation</u> |              |
|----|--------------------------------|---------------|------------------------|---------------|------------------------|--------------|
|    | <i>M&amp;F</i>                 | <i>N</i>      | <i>M&amp;F</i>         | <i>N</i>      | <i>M&amp;F</i>         | <i>N</i>     |
| N  | laudāns                        | laudāns       | vidēns                 | vidēns        | ducēns                 | ducēns       |
| G  | laudantis                      | laudantis     | videntis               | videntis      | ducentis               | ducentis     |
| D  | laudantī                       | laudantī      | videntī                | videntī       | ducentī                | ducentī      |
| A  | laudantem                      | laudāns       | videntem               | vidēns        | ducentem               | ducēns       |
| Ab | laudantī (-e)                  | laudantī (-e) | videntī (-e)           | videntī (-e)  | ducentī (-e)           | ducentī (-e) |
| N  | laudantēs                      | laudantia     | videntēs               | videntia      | ducentēs               | ducentia     |
| G  | laudantium                     | laudantium    | videntium              | videntium     | ducentium              | ducentium    |
| D  | laudantibus                    | laudantibus   | videntibus             | videntibus    | ducentibus             | ducentibus   |
| A  | laudantēs                      | laudantia     | videntēs               | videntia      | ducentēs               | ducentia     |
| Ab | laudantibus                    | laudantibus   | videntibus             | videntibus    | ducentibus             | ducentibus   |
|    | <u>3rd conjugation i-stems</u> |               | <u>4th conjugation</u> |               | <u>īre</u>             |              |
|    | <i>M&amp;F</i>                 | <i>N</i>      | <i>M&amp;F</i>         | <i>N</i>      | <i>M&amp;F</i>         | <i>N</i>     |
| N  | cupiēns                        | cupiēns       | audiēns                | audiēns       | iēns                   | iēns         |
| G  | cupientis                      | cupientis     | audientis              | audientis     | euntis                 | euntis       |
| D  | cupientī                       | cupientī      | audientī               | audientī      | euntī                  | euntī        |
| A  | cupientem                      | cupiēns       | audientem              | audiēns       | euntem                 | iēns         |
| Ab | cupientī (-e)                  | cupientī (-e) | audientī (-e)          | audientī (-e) | euntī (-e)             | euntī (-e)   |
| N  | cupientēs                      | cupientia     | audientēs              | audientia     | euntēs                 | euntia       |
| G  | cupientium                     | cupientium    | audientium             | audientium    | euntium                | euntium      |
| D  | cupientibus                    | cupientibus   | audientibus            | audientibus   | euntibus               | euntibus     |
| A  | cupientēs                      | cupientia     | audientēs              | audientia     | euntēs                 | euntia       |
| Ab | cupientibus                    | cupientibus   | audientibus            | audientibus   | euntibus               | euntibus     |

**Numbers**

|    | <u>duo, duae, duo</u> |             |              | <u>trēs, tria</u> |             |              |
|----|-----------------------|-------------|--------------|-------------------|-------------|--------------|
|    | <i>masc.</i>          | <i>fem.</i> | <i>neut.</i> | <i>masc.</i>      | <i>fem.</i> | <i>neut.</i> |
| N  | duo                   | duae        | duo          | trēs              | trēs        | tria         |
| G  | duōrum                | duārum      | duōrum       | trium             | trium       | trium        |
| D  | duōbus                | duābus      | duōbus       | tribus            | tribus      | tribus       |
| A  | duōs                  | duās        | duo          | trēs              | trēs        | tria         |
| Ab | duōbus                | duābus      | duōbus       | tribus            | tribus      | tribus       |

Cardinal numberOrdinal numberRoman numeral

|      |                                |                   |            |
|------|--------------------------------|-------------------|------------|
| 1    | ūnus, ūna, ūnum                | prīmus            | I          |
| 2    | duo, duae, duo                 | secundus / alter  | II         |
| 3    | trēs, tria                     | tertius           | III        |
| 4    | quattuor                       | quārtus           | III, IV    |
| 5    | quīnque                        | quīntus           | V          |
| 6    | sex                            | sextus            | VI         |
| 7    | septem                         | septimus          | VII        |
| 8    | octō                           | octāvus           | VIII       |
| 9    | novem                          | nōnus             | IX         |
| 10   | decem                          | decimus           | X          |
| 11   | undecim                        | undecimus         | XI         |
| 12   | duodecim                       | duodecimus        | XII        |
| 13   | tredecim / decim (et) trēs     | tertius decimus   | XIII       |
| 14   | quattourdecim                  | quārtus decimus   | XIII, XIV  |
| 15   | quīndecim                      | quīntus decimus   | XV         |
| 16   | sēdecim                        | sextus decimus    | XVI        |
| 17   | septendecim                    | septimus decimus  | XVII       |
| 18   | duodēvigintī                   | duodēvīcēsīmus    | XVIII      |
| 19   | ūndēvigintī                    | ūndēvīcēsīmus     | XVIII, XIX |
| 20   | vīgintī                        | vīcēsīmus         | XX         |
| 21   | vīgintī ūnus / ūnus et vīgintī | vīcēsīmus prīmus  | XXI        |
| 30   | trīgintā                       | trīcēsīmus        | XXX        |
| 40   | quadrāgintā                    | quadrāgēsīmus     | XXXX, XL   |
| 50   | quīnquāgintā                   | quīnquāgēsīmus    | L          |
| 60   | sexāgintā                      | sexāgēsīmus       | LX         |
| 70   | septuāgintā                    | septuāgēsīmus     | LXX        |
| 80   | octōgintā                      | octōgēsīmus       | LXXX       |
| 90   | nōnāgintā                      | nōnāgēsīmus       | LXXXX, XC  |
| 100  | centum                         | centēsīmus        | C          |
| 101  | centum (et) ūnus               | centēsīmus prīmus | CI         |
| 200  | ducentī, -ae, -a               | duocentēsīmus     | CC         |
| 300  | trecentī, -ae, -a              | trecentēsīmus     | CCC        |
| 400  | quadringentī, -ae, -a          | quadringentēsīmus | CCCC, CD   |
| 500  | quīngentī, -ae, -a             | quīngentēsīmus    | D          |
| 600  | sescentī, -ae, -a              | sescentēsīmus     | DC         |
| 700  | septingentī, -ae, -a           | septingentēsīmus  | DCC        |
| 800  | octingentī, -ae, -a            | octingentēsīmus   | DCCC       |
| 900  | nōngentī, -ae, -a              | nōngentēsīmus     | DCCCC, CM  |
| 1000 | mille                          | mīllēsīmus        | M          |



# Vocabulary

---

ENGLISH—LATIN

\* numbers in parentheses following a definition refer to the relevant chapter; verbs of the first conjugation, whose principle parts are -ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, are marked as [1]

- able, to be able** — possum, posse, potuī (4)  
**able** (adj.) — potens (12)  
**about** — dē (prep. + abl.) (3)  
**about to be** — fore (future infinitive of esse) (24)  
**above, to be above** — superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum (7)  
**absent, to be absent** — absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus (14)  
**abundance** — cōpia, cōpiae, f. (9)  
**accept** — accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum (19)  
**accomplish** — faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum (2a); gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum (6)  
**account** — ratiō, ratiōnis, f. (9)  
**account of, on account of** — propter (prep. + acc.) (3)  
**accustomed, to be accustomed** — soleō, solēre, solitus sum (8b, 20)  
**acquire, to acquire** — consequor, consequī, consecūtus sum (20)  
**across** — trāns (prep. + acc.) (4)  
**actual, the actual** — ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pron. (15)  
**act** — factum, factī, n. (2a)  
**act, to act** — agō, -ere, ēgī, actum (1)  
**address, to address** — appellō [1] (15)  
**admit, to admit** — admittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum (17)  
**advice** — cōsiliū, cōsiliī, n. (8a)  
**advise, to advise** — moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum (7)  
**affect, to affect** — moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum (13)  
**afraid, to be afraid of** — timeō, timēre, timuī, - (10)  
**after** — post (prep. + acc.) (9)  
**after** — postquam (introducing temporal clause) (22)  
**again** — iterum (adv.) (17)  
**against** — ad (prep. + acc.) (3); contrā (prep. + acc.) (10); in (prep. + abl.) (3)  
**age** — aetas, aetātis, f. (15)  
**aged** — senex (12)  
**agreeable** — facilis, -e (12)  
**aid** — adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiuvī, adiūtum (7), iuvō, iuvāre, iuvī, iūtum (7)  
**alien** — aliēnus, -a, -um (14)  
**alive, to be alive** — vīvō, -ere, vixī, vīctum (1)  
**alive** — vīvus, -a, -um (6)  
**all** — omnis, omne (12)  
**allow, to allow** — sinō, -ere, sīvī, situm (19)  
**almost** — ferē (32)  
**alone** — sōlus, -a, -um (gen. sōlius) (9); unius, -a, -um (gen. unīus) (9)  
**already** — iam (6)  
**also** — etiam (10), quoque (4)  
**not only ... but also** — nōn solum ... sed etiam (9)  
**although** — quamquam, conj. (11)  
**always** — semper (1)  
**amazed, to be amazed at** — miror, -ārī, mirātus sum (20)  
**ambush** — insidiae, -ārum, f. pl. (10)  
**amid** — in (prep. + abl.) (3), inter (prep. + acc.) (4)  
**among** — apud (prep. + acc.) (10); in (prep. + abl.) (3); inter (prep. + acc.) (4)  
**amuse** — dēlectō [1] (14)  
**amusement** — dēlectatio -tiōnis, f. (16)  
**ancient** — antiquus, -a, -um (6)  
**answer, to answer** — rēpondeō, rēpondere, rēpondī, rēponsum (16)  
**and** — ac, atque (10), et (1), -que (enclitic) (5)  
**and not** — nec, neque (8a)  
**and so** — itaque, adv. (14)  
**anger** — ira, irae, f. (2a)  
**animal** — animal, animālis, n. (12)  
**another** — alius, alia, aliud (gen. alterius) (9)  
**announce** — nūntiō [1] (16); prōnūntiō [1] (16)  
**anxiety** — metus, metūs, m. (18)  
**any** — ūllus, -a, -um (gen. ūllius) (9)  
**apart from** — praeter (prep. + acc.) (10)  
**approach, to approach** — adeō, adire, adivī (or adii), aditum (4)  
**argument** — argumentum, -ī, n. (20)



- arise, to arise** — nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum (20); orior, orīrī, ortus sum (20)
- arms** — arma, -ōrum, n. pl. (3)
- army** — exercitus, exercitūs, m. (18)
- arouse, to arouse** — moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum (13)
- art** — ars, artis, f. (12)
- as** — ut (23)
- ask, to ask** — petō, petere, petīvī, petitum (21); quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum (24)
- assume, to assume** — sūmō, sūmere, sumpsī, sumptum (16)
- assuredly** — vērō (23)
- astonished, be astonished** — mīror, -ārī, mīrātus sum (20)
- at that time** — tum (5)
- attack** — impetus, impetūs, m. (18)
- attack, to attack** — oppugnō [1] (19)
- attempt, to attempt** — cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum (20); temptō [1] (8b)
- attend, to attend to** — colō, -ere, coluī, cultum (13)
- attract, to attract** — trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum (9)
- augment, to augment** — augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum (21)
- authority** — auctōritās, -tātis, f. (11), potestās, -tātis, f. (10)
- avert** — avertō, avertere, avertī, aversum
- avoid, to avoid** — fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum (2a); vitō [1] (7)
- await** — expectō [1] (17)
- away, to be away** — absūm, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus (14)
- away, to go away** — discēdo, discēdere, discessī, discessum (19)
- away from** — ab or ā (4)
- bad** — malus, -a, -um (6)
- bad, very bad** — pessimus, -a, -um (6)
- badly** — male (adv.) (23)
- band (of soldiers)** — manus, manūs, f. (18)
- banish, to banish** — (ex)pellō, (ex)pellere, (ex)pulī, (ex)pulsum (21)
- barely** — vix (23)
- battle** — aciēs, aciēi, f. (18)
- be, to be** — sum, esse, fui, futūrum (4)
- be able, to** — possum, posse, potuī (4)
- be alive, to** — vīvō, -ere, vixī, victum (1)
- bear, to bear** — tolerō [1] (8b)
- beautiful** — bellus, -a, -um (6), pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (8a)
- beautifully** — pulchre (23)
- beauty** — forma, formae, f. (4)
- because** — quia (11), quod (11), quoniam (9)
- because of** — propter (prep. + acc.) (3)
- because of which** — quārē (9)
- before** — ante (prep. + acc.) (9), prō (prep. + abl.) (10)
- before** — antequam (22)
- beget, to beget** — gigno, gignere, genuī, genitum (17)
- began** — coepī, coepisse, coeptum (21)
- begin, to begin** — incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum (8b)
- beginning** — principium, principiū, n. (11)
- at the beginning** — primō (23)
- behind** — post (prep. + acc) (9)
- behind, to leave behind** — relinquo, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum (15)
- believe (somebody + dative)** — crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum (16)
- belonging to another** — aliēnus, -a, -um (14)
- belonging to the people** — pūblicus, -a, -um (13)
- benefit** — beneficium, beneficiū, n. (19)
- besides** — praeter (prep. + acc.) (10)
- best** — optimus, -a, -um (6)
- between** — inter (prep. + acc.) (4)
- beyond** — ultrā (prep. + acc.) (20)
- bid, to bid** — iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum (16)
- bitter** — acerbus, -a, -um (11)
- blame, to blame** — culpō [1] (7)
- blame** — culpa, -ae, f. (8a)
- blessed** — beātus, -a, -um (8a)
- blind** — caecus, -a, -um (17)
- body** — corpus, corporis, n. (5)
- book** — liber, librī, m. (2a)
- born, to be born** — nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum (20)

- both ... and** — et ... et (8b)
- boundary** — finis, fīnis, m. (20)
- boy** — puer, puerī, m. (2a)
- brave** — fortis, -e (12)
- bravely** — fortiter (adv.) (23)
- breath** — spīritus, spīritūs, m. (18)
- brief** — brevis, -e (12)
- bright** — clārus, -a, -um (8a)
- bring forth** — gigno, gignere, genuī, genitum (17)
- bring up** — ēducō [1] (24)
- brother** — frāter, frātris, m. (5)
- build, to build** — faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum (2a)
- bull** — taurus, taurī, m. (17)
- business affair** — rēs, rēi, f. (18)
- but** — sed (1)
- but also** — nōn solum ... sed etiam (9)
- calculation** — ratiō, ratiōnis, f. (9)
- call, to call** — appellō [1] (15); vocō [1] (7)
- camp** — castra, -ōrum, n. (10)
- can** — possum, posse, potuī (4)
- capability** — facultas, -tātis, f. (32)
- capture, to capture** — capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum (2a)
- care** — cūra, cūrae, f. (8a)
- care for, to care for** — colō, -ere, coluī, cultum (13);  
tueor, tuērī, tutus sum (20)
- carry, to carry** — gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum (6); portō  
[1] (14)
- carry away** — rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum (21)
- case (legal)** — causa, causae, f. (4)
- ‘**Is it not the case that...?**’ — nōnne  
    (introducing a question expecting an affirmative  
    answer) (13)
- ‘**It’s not the case that ..., is it?**’ — num  
    (introducing a question expecting a negative)  
    (13)
- catch, to catch** — capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum (2a)
- cause** — causa, causae, f. (4)
- caution** — cūra, cūrae, f. (8a);
- cease, to cease** — dēsīnō, -ere, -sīvī, -situm (8b)
- censure** — culpō [1] (7)
- certain** — certus, -a, -um (13)
- certainly** — quidem (23), vērō (23)
- chair** — sēdes, sēdis, m. (24)
- change, to change** — mūtō [1] (13)
- character** — mōrēs, mōrum, m. pl. (5); virtūs,  
virtūtis, f. (5)
- chapter** — caput, capitis, n. (11)
- charge, concern** — cūra, cūrae, f. (8a)
- chase, to chase** — persequor, persequī, persecūtus  
sum (20)
- check** — opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum  
(20)
- cherish** — alō, alere, aluī, altum (14)
- children** — liberī, liberōrum, m. (8a)
- choose, to choose** — legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum (1)
- citizen** — cīvis, cīvis, m./f. (12)
- citizenship** — cīvītās, cīvītātis, f. (5)
- city** — urbs, urbis, f. (12)
- civilized** — hūmānus, -a, -um (6)
- class** — genus, generis, n. (17)
- clear** — clārus, -a, -um (8a)
- coast** — litus, litoris, n. (19)
- come, to come** — veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum (2a)
- come upon, to come upon** — inveniō, invenīre,  
    invēnī, inventum (10)
- come out, to come out** — ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvēnī,  
    ēventum (10)
- comfort** — sōlācium, sōlāciī, n. (20)
- command, to command** — iubeō, iubēre, iūssī,  
iūssum (16)
- commander** — imperātor, -tōris, m. (7)
- commit, to commit** — committō, committere,  
commīsī, commissum (19)
- common** — communis, -e (15)
- commonwealth** — rēs publica, rēi publicae, f. (18)
- completely** — omnīno (23)
- conceal, to conceal** — cēlō, -āre, āvi, -ātum (24)
- concealed, to be concealed** — lateō, latēre, latuī, -  
(10)
- concern, to concern** — pertineō, -ēre, -tenuī,  
-tentum (21)
- conduct, to conduct** — gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum (6)
- conquer, to conquer** — superō [1] (7), vincō, -ere,  
vīcī, victum (1)

- consider, to consider** — cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum (7)
- contain, to contain** — contineō, -ēre (21)
- continuous** — perpetuus, -a, -um (8a)
- contrary** — diversus, -a, -um (14)
- control, to control** — contineō, -ēre (21)
- cottage** — casa, -ae, f. (15)
- counsel** — cōsiliū, cōsiliī, n. (8a),
- country** — terra, -ae, f. (3)
- courage** — animī, -ōrum, m. pl. (8a)
- courage** — virtūs, virtūtis, f. (5)
- course** — cursus, -us, m. (20)
- create, to create** — creō [1] (13)
- crime** — scelus, sceleris, n. (19), vitium, -iī, n. (8a)
- crowd** — turba, -ae, f. (12)
- cultivate, to cultivate** — colō, -ere, coluī, cultum (13)
- cultivation** — cultus, -ūs, m. (18)
- cure** — remedium, remediī, n. (9)
- custom** — mōs, mōris, m. (5)
- daily** — cotīdiē (19)
- danger** — periculum, periculī, n. (2a)
- dare, to dare** — audeō, audēre, ausus sum (8b, 20)
- daughter** — filia, -ae, f. (irreg. dative/ablative pl.: filiabus) (3)
- day** — dies, diēi, m. (18)
- dead** — mortuus, -a, -um (6)
- dear** — cārus, -a, -um (11)
- death** — mors, mortis, f. (12)
- deceive, to deceive** — fallō, -ere, fefelli, falsum (6)
- decision** — iūdicium, iūdicīi, n. (19)
- deed** — factum, factī, n. (2a)
- deed, evil deed** — scelus, sceleris, n. (19)
- deep** — altus, -a, -um (13)
- deepest** — imus, -a, -um (23)
- defeat** — vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum (1)
- defend** — dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum (17)
- deity** — deus, -ī, m. (3)
- delay** — mora, -ae, f. (4)
- delight, to delight** — dēlectō [1] (14)
- delightful** — iūcundus, -a, -um (12)
- deliver, to deliver** — trādō, -ere, trādīdī, trādītum (3)
- demonstrate** — dēmonstrō [1] (10)
- deny, to deny** — negō [1] (16)
- deprive, to deprive** — privō [1] (+ abl. of separation) (18)
- deprived, to be deprived of** (+ abl. of separation) — careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (18)
- derive, to derive** — trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum (9)
- derive enjoyment from** — fruor, fruī, fructus sum (+abl) (20)
- desire** — cupiditās, cupiditātis, f. (10)
- desire, to desire** — cupio, cupere, cupivī, cupītum (8b); dēsīderō [1] (17)
- destroy, to destroy** — dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētum (17); tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum (21)
- destruction** — exitium, exitiī, n. (4)
- die, to die** — pereō, perīre, perivī (or perīi), peritum (4); morior, morī, mortuus sum (20)
- different** — alius, -a, -um (9); dissimilis, -e (12); diversus, -a, -um (14)
- difficult** — difficilis, -e (12)
- dignity** — dignitas, -tātis, f. (14); auctōritās, -tātis, f. (11)
- dine, to dine** — cēnō [1] (7)
- direct, to direct** — regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum (1)
- disappear, to disappear** — pereō, perīre, perivī (or perīi), peritum (4)
- discern** — cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum (21)
- discernment** — sapientia, sapientiae, f. (2a)
- disclose, to disclose** — patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactum (16)
- disease** — morbus, -ī, m. (9)
- display, to display** — ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum (16)
- disregard** — negligō, negligere, negligēxī, negligētum (17)
- distinguish, to distinguish** — cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum (21)
- disturb, to disturb** — misceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtum (19)

- disturbance** — turba, -ae, f. (12)  
**diverse** — diversus, -a, -um (14)  
**divert** — avertō, avertere, averti, aversum  
**divide, to divide** — dividō, dividere, dīvisi, dīvisum (21)  
**do, to do** — agō, -ere, ēgī, actum (1); faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum (2a); gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum (6)  
**doctor** — medicus, medicī, m. (9)  
**don't...** — nōlī, nōlīte (1)  
**doubt** — dubitō [1] (24)  
**down from** — dē (prep. + ablative) (3)  
**drag, to drag** — trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum (9)  
**draw, to draw** — trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum (9)  
**dread** — metus, metūs, m. (18)  
**drink, to drink** — bibō, -ere, bibī (2a)  
**drive, to drive** — agō, agere, ēgī, actum (1)  
**drive out, to drive out** — ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum (14); (ex)pellō, (ex)pellere, (ex)pulī, (ex)pulsum (22)  
**drop, to drop** — mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum (3)  
**duty** — officium, officii, n. (4)  
**each** — quisque, quaeque, quidque (gen. cuiusque, dat. cuique) (14)  
**eagerness** — studium, -iī, n. (10)  
**ear** — auris, auris, f. (12)  
**earth** — terra, -ae, f. (3)  
**easily** — facile (23)  
**easy** — facilis, -e (12)  
**edge** — aciēs, aciēi, f. (18)  
**educate** — ēducō [1] (24)  
**eight** — octō (22)  
**either ... or** — aut ... aut (8b)  
**either (of two)** — uter, -tra, -trum (gen. utrius) (9)  
**eject** — ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum (14)  
**elect (to office), to elect** — creō [1] (13)  
**eleven** — undecim (13)  
**emperor** — imperātor, -tōris, m. (7)  
**empire** — imperium, imperii, n. (15)  
**empty** — vacuus, -a, -um (14)  
**encampment** — castra, -ōrum, n. (10)  
**encourage, to encourage** — hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum (20)  
**end** — finis, finis, m. (20)  
**end, to end** — discēdo, discēdere, discessī, discessum (19)  
**endure, to endure** — tolerō [1] (8b); patior, pati, passus sum (20)  
**enemy** — inimicus, -i, m. (11), hostis, hostis, m. (12)  
**enjoy, to enjoy** — fruor, frui, fructus sum (+abl) (20)  
**enjoyment, derive enjoyment from** — fruor, frui, fructus sum (+abl) (20)  
**enlarge, to enlarge** — augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum (21)  
**enough** — satis, n. (indeclinable) (22)  
**entire** — tōtus, -a, -um (gen. tōtius) (9)  
**entirely** — omnino (23)  
**entrance** — porta, -ae, f. (3)  
**entrust, to entrust** — committō, committere, commīsī, commissum (19)  
**epistle** — epistula, -ae, f. (2); litterae, -ārum, f. pl. (13)  
**equal** — aequus, -a, -um (14)  
**equity** — aequitās, tātis, f. (14)  
**erase** — dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvi, dēlētum (17)  
**err, to err** — errō [1] (7)  
**error** — error, erroris, m. (19)  
**escape, to escape** — fugiō, -ere, fūgi, fugiturum (2a)  
**esteem highly** — diligō, diligere, dilēxi, dilēctum (13)  
**even (adv.)** — etiam (10)  
**even (adj.)** — aequus, -a, -um (14)  
**ever** — umquam (15)  
**every** — omnis, omne (12); quisque, quaeque, quidque (14)  
**every day** — cotidiē (19)  
**evil** — malus, -a, -um (6)  
**evil deed** — scelus, sceleris, n. (19)  
**examine, to examine** — probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum (16)  
**example** — exemplum, -i, n. (20)  
**exceedingly** — magnopere (23)

- excellence** — virtus, -tūtis, f. (5)  
**excellent** — bellus, -a, -um (6)  
**except** — nisi (4), praeter (prep. + acc.) (10)  
**except, to except** — excipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptum (19)  
**exhibit, to exhibit** — ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum (16)  
**exhort, to exhort** — hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum (20)  
**exist, to exist** — sum, esse, fuī, futūrum (4)  
**exit, to exit** — exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum (4)  
**expect** — exspectō [1] (17)  
**expel, to expel** — expellō, expellere, expulī, pulsum (21)  
**expensive** — cārus, -a, -um (11)  
**experience, to experience** — ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.) (20)  
**expose, to expose** — patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactum (16)  
**extravagance** — lūxuria, -ae, f. (13)  
**eye** — oculus, -ī, m. (2a)  
**face** — ōs, ōris, n. (12); vultus, vultūs, m. (18)  
**facing** — contrā (10)  
**fact** — factum, factī, n. (2)  
**in fact** — enim (7); quidem (23)  
**fairness** — aequitās, tātis, f. (14)  
**faith** — fides, fideī, f. (18)  
**faithful** — fidelis, fidēle (15)  
**fall, to fall** — cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum (11)  
**fame** — fāma, fāmae, f. (2b); glōria, glōriae, f. (8a)  
**family** — familia, -ae, f. (15)  
**famous** — clārus, -a, -um (8a)  
**far** — longe (adv.) (23)  
**farmer** — agricola, -ae, m. (4)  
**fate** — fātum, -ī, n. (14)  
**father** — pater, patris, m. (5)  
**fatherland** — patria, -ae, f. (3)  
**fault** — culpa, culpae, f. (8a), vitium, vitīi, n. (8a)  
**find fault with, to** — culpō [1] (7)  
**favour** — grātia, -ae, f. (3); officium, officīi, n. (4)  
**favour, a favour** — beneficium, beneficii, n. (19)  
**favorable** — secundus, -a, -um (13)  
**fear** — metus, metūs, m. (18); timor, timōris, m. (5)  
**fear, to fear** — timeō, timēre, timuī, - (10); metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum (35); vereor, verērī, veritus sum (20)  
**feel, to feel** — sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sensum (11)  
**feeling** — sensus, sensūs, m. (18)  
**ferocious** — ferōx, gen. ferōcis (16)  
**few** — paucī, -ae, -a (plural only) (6)  
**fidelity** — fides, fideī, f. (18)  
**field** — ager, agrī, m. (2b)  
**fierce** — ācer, ācris, ācre (12) ferōx, gen. ferōcis (16)  
**fiercely** — acriter (adv.) (23)  
**fifth** — quīntus, -a, -um (22)  
**fight, to fight** — pugnō [1] (19)  
**final** — ultimus, -a, -um (6)  
**finally** — denique, adv. (15)  
**find, to find** — inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum (10)  
**find fault with, to** — culpō [1] (7)  
**finger** — digitus, -ī, m. (2)  
**fire** — ignis, ignis, m. (17)  
**first** — prīmus, -a, -um (6)  
**at first** — primō (23)  
**five** — quīnque (22)  
**flame** — flamma, flammae, f. (17)  
**flee, to flee** — fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum (2a)  
**flourish, to flourish** — valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum (7)  
**flow** — fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxum (17)  
**flower** — flōs, flōris, m. (19)  
**follow, to follow** — sequor, sequī, secūtus sum (20; consequor, consequī, consecūtus sum (20); insequor, insequī, insecūtus sum (20)  
**fool** — stultus, -ī, m.  
**foolish** — stultus, -a, -um (6)  
**foolishness** — stultitia, -ae, f. (2b)  
**foot** — pēs, pedis, m. (15)  
**for** — enim (7), nam (10)  
**force** — vīs, vīs, f. (12)  
**forces** — copiae, -ārum, f. pl. (9)  
**foreign** — aliēnus, -a, -um (14)  
**foremost** — prīmus, -a, -um (6)

- form** — forma, -ae, f. (4)  
**formerly** — quondam, adv. (23)  
**forth, to go forth** — progredior, progredi, progressus sum (20)  
**fortunate** — fortunātus, -a, -um (14); fēlix, gen. fēlicis (20)  
**fortune** — fortuna, fortunae, f. (3)  
**forum** — forum, -i, n. (15)  
**foul** — turpis, -e (23)  
**four** — quattuor (22)  
**fourth** — quārtus, -a, -um (22)  
**free** — liber, libera, liberum (8a)  
**free, to free** — liberō [1] (15)  
**freedom** — libertās, libertātis, f. (5)  
**freely** — libere (adv.) (23)  
**friend (female)** — amīca, amīcae, f. (2b)  
**friend (male)** — amīcus, amīci, m. (2b)  
**friendly** — amīcus, -a, -um (11)  
**friendship** — amīcitia, -ae, f. (4)  
**frighten** — terreō, terrere, terrui, territum (7)  
**from** — ab (prep. + abl.) (4); dē (3); ex (3)  
**from that place** — illinc, adv.  
**from this place** — hinc, adv.  
**from where? whence** — unde  
**front, in front of** — prō (prep. + abl.) (10)  
**fruit** — fructus, fructūs, m. (18)  
**full** — plēnus, -a, -um (8a)  
**furthermore** — autem (8b)  
**game** — lūdus, lūdī, m. (20)  
**gate** — porta, -ae, f. (3)  
**gather, to gather** — legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum (1); carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum (flowers) (23)  
**general** — imperātor, -tōris, m. (7); dux, ducis, m. (14)  
**gentleness** — clēmētia, -ae, f. (13)  
**get, to get** — capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum (2a); parō [1] (15); trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum (9)  
**gift** — dōnum, -i, n. (2)  
**girl** — puella, puellae, f. (2a)  
**girlfriend** — amīca, amīcae, f. (2b)  
**give, to give** — dō, dāre, dedi, datum (7)  
**glory** — glōria, glōriae, f. (8a), laus, laudis, f. (10)  
**go, to go** — eō, ire, ivi (or ii), itum (1, 4); gradior, gradi, gressus sum (20)  
**go astray, to go astray** — errō [1] (7)  
**go away, to go away** — discēdo, -ere, -cessi, -cessum (19); exeō, exire, exiī, exitum (4)  
**go away from** — cēdō, cēdere, cessi, cessum (+ dat.) (19)  
**go back, to go back** — redeō, redire, redivi (or adii), reditum (4)  
**go forth, to go forth** — progredior, progredi, progressus sum (20)  
**go out, to go out** — egredior, egredi, egressus sum (20), exeō, exire, exiī, exitum (4)  
**go to/towards, to go to/towards** — adeō, adire, adivi (or adii), aditum (4); obeō, -ire, -ivi, -itum (24)  
**god** — deus, -i, m. (3)  
**goddess** — dea, -ae, f. (irreg. dative/ablative plural: deabus) (3)  
**good** — bonus, -a, -um (6)  
**very good** — optimus, -a, -um (6)  
**good-bye** — vale, valēte (7)  
**gratitude** — grātia, -ae, f. (3)  
**grave** — sepulcrum, -i, n. (24)  
**great** — magnus, -a, -um (6)  
**greatest** — maximus, -a, -um (6)  
**greatly** — magnopere (adv.) (23)  
**greed** — cupiditās, cupiditātis, f. (10)  
**greedy** — avārus, -a, -um (6)  
**Greek** — Graecus, -a, -um (6)  
**grow** — crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus (13)  
**guard** — cōservō [1] (7); servō [1] (7)  
**guilt** — culpa, culpaē, f. (8a)  
**habit** — mōs, mōris, m. (5)  
**hand** — manus, manūs, f. (18)  
**hand over, to hand over** — trādō, -ere, trādidi, trāditum (3)  
**handsome** — pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum (8a)  
**happen, to happen** — eveniō, evenire, evēni, eventum (10)  
**happily** — feliciter (adv.) (23)

- happy** — beātus, -a, -um (8a); fortūnātus, -a, -um (14); fēlix, gen. fēlicis (20)
- harbour** — portus, portūs, m. (18)
- hard** — difficilis, -e (12)
- harm** — iniūria, -ae, f. (19)
- harmful** — sinister, sinistra, sinistrum (18)
- harsh** — acerbus, -a, -um (11); asper, aspera, asperum (15)
- hate, to hate** — ōdī, ōdisse, ōsum (*defective*) (16)
- have, to have** — habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum (7)
- he/she/it** — is, ea, id (gen. eius) (10), hīc, haec, hōc (gen. huius) (9), ille, illa, illud (gen. illius) (9)
- head** — caput, capitis, n. (11)
- health, be in good health** — salveō, salvēre (7)
- health** — salūs, salūtis, f. (16)
- healthy** — sānus, -a, -um (8a)
- hear, to hear** — audiō, audīre, audiṽi, audītum (2a)
- heart** — cor, cordis, n. (12)
- heaven** — caelum, -ī, n. (3)
- heavy** — gravis, -e (12)
- hello** — salve, salvēte (7)
- help, to help** — adiuvō, adiuvāre, adiūvī, adiūtum (7); iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum (7)
- hence** — hinc, adv. (10)
- her** — eius (5)
- here** — hīc, adv.
- her own** — suus, -a, -um, reflex. poss. (14)
- herself** —  
— (intensive) ipse, ipsa, ipsum (15)  
— (reflexive) --, suī, sibi, sē, sē (15)
- hesitate** — dubitō [1] (24)
- hide, to hide** — lateō, latēre, latuī (10)
- high** — altus, -a, -um (13)
- highest** (part of); **highest** — summus, -a, -um (23)
- high spirits** — animī, -ōrum, m. pl. (8a)
- himself** —  
— (intensive) ipse, ipsa, ipsum (15)  
— (reflexive) --, suī, sibi, sē, sē (15)
- hinder, to hinder** — prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum (21)
- his** — eius (5)
- his own** — suus, -a, -um (14)
- hither** — hūc, adv. (10)
- hold, to hold** — habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum (7); teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum (11)
- home** — domus, domūs, f. (18)
- homeland** — patria, -ae, f. (3)
- homewards** — domum (1)
- honesty** — probitas, probitātis, f. (20)
- honourable** — honestus, -a, -um (17)
- honoured** — honestus, -a, -um (17)
- honour** — honor, honōris, m. (5)
- hope** — spēs, spēi, f. (18)
- hope, to hope** — spērō [1] (24)
- horn** — cornu, cornūs, n. (18)
- horse** — equus, equī, m. (3)
- hostile** — inimīcus, -a, -um (11)
- hour** — hōra, -ae, f. (6)
- house** — casa, -ae, f. (15); domus, domūs, f. (18)
- house of, at the** — apud + acc. (10)
- household** — familia, -ae, f. (15)
- how?** — quō modō (13)
- how** — (as an exclamation when used before an adjective) quam (13)
- how many ...?** — quot...? (13)
- however** — autem (postpositive) (8b)
- huge** — ingēns (12)
- human** — hūmānus, -a, -um (6)
- human being** — homō, hominis, m. (5)
- humane** — hūmānus, -a, -um (6)
- humble** — humilis, -e (23)
- hundred** — centum (22)
- hurry away** — fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum (2)
- husband** — vir, virī, m. (2a)
- hut** — casa, -ae, f. (15)
- I** — ego, meī, mihi, mē, mē (10)
- if** — sī (4)
- if not** — nisi (4)
- ignorant, to be ignorant of** — nesciō, nescīre, nescīvī, nescītum (16)
- ill-omened** — sinister, sinistra, sinistrum (18)
- illustrious** — clārus, -a, -um (8a)

- image** — imāgō, imāginis, f. (17)
- immediately** — protinus, adv. (23)
- important** — gravis, -e (12)
- in** — in (prep. + abl.) (3)
- inasmuch as** — quoniam (9)
- increase, to increase** — augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum (21); crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus (13)
- indeed** — autem (postpositive) (8b); enim (postpositive) (7) quidem (23)
- influence** — auctōritās, -tātis, f. (11)
- inimical** — inimicus, -a, -um (11)
- injury** — iniūria, -ae, f. (19)
- instead of** — prō (10)
- into** — in (prep. + acc.) (3)
- invite, to invite** — vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum (7)
- iron** — ferrum, ferrī, n. (17)
- is it?** — num (14)
- it** — id (gen. eius) (10); hōc (gen. huius) (9), illud (gen. illius) (9)
- itself** —  
ipse, ipsa, ipsum (*intensive*) (15)  
-, suī, sibi, sē, sē (*reflexive*) (15)
- its own** — suus, -a, -um, reflex. poss. (14)
- join, to join** — iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum (15)
- journey** — iter, itineris, n. (24)
- judge** — iūdex, iūdicis, m. (14)
- judge, to judge** — existimō, existimāre, existimāvī, existimātum (16); probō, probāre, probāvī, probātum (16); putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum (16); arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum (20)
- judgement** — cōsiliū, cōsiliū, n. (8a), ratiō, ratiōnis, f. (9); iūdicium, iūdicī, n. (19); sententia, sententiae, f. (2a)
- judicious** — sapiēns, gen. sapientis (14)
- juror** — iūdex, iūdicis, m. (14)
- just** — iūstus, -a, -um; aequus, -a, -um (14)  
**just as** — ut (23)
- justice** — iūstitia, -ae, f. (2b), iūs, iūris, n. (12)
- keen** — ācer, ācris, ācre (12)
- keenly** — acriter (adv.) (23)
- keep, to keep** — teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum (11)
- keep safe, to keep safe** — cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātum (7), servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum (7)
- kill, to kill** — necō, necāre, necāvī, necātum (9); interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum (2a); occidō, occidere, occidī, occisum (24)
- kind** — genus, generis, n. (17)
- kindness** — beneficium, beneficii, n. (19); officium, officī, n. (4)  
favour
- king** — rēx, rēgis, m. (5)
- kingdom** — regnum, regnī, n. (16)
- kingly rule** — regnum, regnī, n. (16)
- kingship** — regnum, regnī, n. (16)
- kiss** — bāsiū, bāsiī, n. (22)
- knee** — genu, genūs, n. (18)
- know, to know** — sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum (16); (cog) noscō, noscere, nōvī, nōtum (16)
- knowledge** — scientia, scientiae, f. (19)
- labour** — labor, labōris, m. (5)
- labour, to labour** — labōrō, labōrāre, labōrāvī, labōrātum (10)
- lack, to lack** (+ *abl. of separation*) — careō, carēre, caruī, caritūrus (18)
- land** — terra, -ae, f. (3)
- language** — lingua, -ae, f. (15)
- large** — magnus, -a, -um (6)
- last** — ultimus, -a, -um (6)
- lasting** — perpetuus, -a, -um (8a)
- law** — iūs, iūris, n. (12); lēx, lēgis, f. (5)
- lead, to lead** — agō, -ere, ēgī, āctum (1); dūcō, -ere, dūxī, ductum (1)
- leader** — dux, ducis, m. (14)
- learn, to learn** — discō, -ere, didicī (1)
- leave, to leave** — discēdo, discēdere, discessī, discessum (19)
- learned** — doctus, -a, -um (15)
- leave, to leave behind** — relinquō, -linquere, -liquī, -lictum (15)
- left, left-handed** — sinister, sinistra, sinistrum (18)
- leisure** — ōtium, ōtīi, n. (4)
- less ... than** — minus ...quam (18)



- let go, to let go** — *āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum* (11)  
**let in** — *admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum* (17)  
**letter** — *epistula, -ae, f.* (2); *litterae, -ārum, f. pl.* (13)  
**letter** (of the alphabet) — *littera, -ae, f.* (13)  
**level** — *aequus, -a, -um* (14)  
**liberate, to liberate** — *liberō* [1] (15)  
**liberty** — *libertās, libertātis, f.* (5)  
**lie, to lie** — *fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum* (6)  
**lie, to lie** (prostrate *or* dead) — *iaceō, iacēre, iacūi* (16)  
**lie hid, to lie hid** — *lateō, latēre, latuī* (10)  
**life** — *aetās, aetātis, f.* (15); *vīta, vītae, f.* (2a)  
**lifeless** — *mortuus, -a, -um* (6)  
**lift up, to lift up** — *tollō, tollere, sustūli, sublātum* (21)  
**light, not heavy** — *levis, -e* (12)  
**light** — *lūx, lūcis, f.* (19)  
**like, to like** — *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum* (7)  
**like** (adj.) — *similis, -e* (12)  
**like, to like** — *diligō, diligere, dilēxī, dilēctum* (13)  
**likeness** — *imāgō, imāginis, f.* (17)  
**limit** — *fīnis, fīnis, m.* (20); *modus, -ī, m.* (13)  
**line of battle** — *aciēs, aciēi, f.* (18)  
**line of verse** — *versus, versūs, m.* (18)  
**listen to, to listen to** — *audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum* (2a)  
**little** — *parum, adv.* (22)  
**live, to live** — *vīvō, -ere, vīxī, vīctum* (1)  
**living** — *vīvus, -a, -um* (6)  
**long, for long** (adv.) — *diū* (11)  
**long** (adj.) — *longus, longa, longum* (8a)  
**long for, to long for** — *dēsiderō* [1] (17)  
**longing** — *cupiditās, cupiditātis, f.* (10)  
**look at, to look at** — *videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum* (7)  
**look for, to look for** — *expectō, expectāre, expectāvī, expectātum* (17); *quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesitum* (24)  
**look after, to look after** — *tueor, tuērī, tutus sum* (20)  
**lord** — *dominus, -ī, m.* (4)  
**lose, to lose** — *āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum* (11)  
**love** — *amor, amoris, m.* (5)  
**love, to love** — *amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum* (7); *diligō, diligere, dilēxī, dilēctum* (13)  
**loving** — *amicus, -a, -um* (11)  
**lowest** — *imus, -a, -um* (23)  
**lowly** — *humilis, -e* (23)  
**loyal** — *fidēlis, fidēle* (15)  
**luck** — *fortūna, fortūnae, f.* (3)  
**lucky** — *fortūnātus, -a, -um* (14); *felix, gen. felicis* (20)  
**lurk, to lurk** — *lateō, latēre, latuī, -* (10)  
**lust** — *cupiditās, cupiditātis, f.* (10)  
**luxury** — *lūxuria, -ae, f.* (13)  
**maiden** — *virgō, virginis, f.* (5)  
**make, to make** — *faciō, -ere, fēcī, factum* (2a)  
**man** — *homō, hominis, m.* (5); *vir, virī, m.* (2a)  
**manage** — *gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum* (6)  
**manliness** — *virtūs, virtūtis, f.* (5)  
**manner** — *modus, -ī, m.* (13); *mōs, mōris, m.* (5)  
**manner, in what manner?** — *quō modō* (13)  
**many** — *multī, -a, -ae* (plural) (6)  
**so many** — *tot* (adv.)  
**march** — *iter, itineris, n.* (24)  
**master** — *dominus, -ī, m.* (4); *magister, magistrī, m.* (4)  
**matter** — *rēs, rēi, f.* (18)  
**means** — *facultas, -tātis, f.* (32)  
**measure** — *modus, -ī, m.* (13)  
**meet, to meet** — *obeō, -īre, -ivī, -itum* (24)  
**memory** — *memoria, memoriae, f.* (13)  
**mercy** — *clēmētia, -ae, f.* (13)  
**method** — *ratio, ratiōnis, f.* (9)  
**middle** — *medius, -a, -um* (23)  
**in mediō marī** — ‘in the middle of the sea’  
**military camp** — *castra, -ōrum, n. pl.* (10)  
**mildness** — *clēmētia, -ae, f.* (13)  
**mind** — *animus, animī, m.* (8a); *mēns, mēntis, f.* (12)  
**mindful** — *memor* (gen. *memoris*) (19)  
**miserable** — *miser, misera, miserum* (15)  
**miserly** — *avārus, -a, -um* (6)  
**misery** — *miseria, -ae, f.* (14)  
**mislead, to mislead** — *fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum* (6)

- miss** — *dēsiderō, dēsiderāre, dēsiderāvī, dēsiderātum* (17)
- mistaken, to be mistaken** — *errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum* (7)
- mistress** — *domina, -ae, f.* (4)
- mix, to mix** — *miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtum* (19)
- mob** — *turba, -ae, f.* (12)
- mode** — *modus, -ī, m.* (13)
- money** — *pecūnia, -ae, f.* (3)
- morals** — *mōrēs, mōrum, m. pl.* (5)
- more ... than** — *magis ... quam* (18); *plus ... quam* (18)
- moreover** — *autem* (postpositive) (8b)
- most** — *plurimus, -a, -um* (23)
- mother** — *māter, mātris, f.* (5)
- mountain** — *mons, montis, m.* (18)
- mouth** — *ōs, ōris, n.* (12)
- move, to move** — *moveō, movēre, movī, mōtum* (13)
- much** — *multum, adv.* (15, 22)
- much** — *multus, -a, -um* (6)
- multitude** — *turba, -ae, f.* (12)
- murder, to murder** — *necō, necāre, necāvī, necātum* (9)
- must** — *dēbeō, dēbere, dēbuī, dēbitum* (8b)
- my** — *meus, -a, -um* (6)
- name, to name** — *appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum* (15)
- name** — *nōmen, nōminis, n.* (5)
- narrate, to narrate** — *nārrō* [1] (16)
- nation** — *gens, gentis, f.* (17); *populus, populī, m.* (2a)
- natural** — *nātūrālis, -e* (14)
- nature** — *mōs, mōris, m.* (5); *nātūra, -ae, f.* (2b)
- navigate** — *nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātum* (17)
- near** — *apud* (prep. + acc.) (10)
- nearest** — *proximus, -a, -um* (8a)
- need** — *egeō, egēre, eguī, egitūrus* (+ abl. of separation) (18)
- neglect, to neglect** — *neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum* (17)
- neighbour** — *vīcina, vīcinae, f. or vīcīnus, vīcīnī, m.* (15)
- neither** (of two) — *neuter, -tra, -trum* (gen. *neutrius*) (9)
- neither ... nor** — *nec ... nec; neque ... neque* (8b)
- necessary, it is necessary** (+ infinitive) — *necesse est* (1)
- never** — *numquam* (3)
- nevertheless** — *tamen, adv.* (9)
- new** — *novus, -a, -um* (8a)
- next** — *deinde, adv.* (14); *dehinc* (16)
- next to** — *proximus, -a, -um* (8a)
- night** — *nox, noctis, f.* (17)
- nine** — *novem* (22)
- no** — *nūllus, -a, -um* (gen. *nūllius*) (9)
- no one** — *nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ nūllā m./f.* (10)
- noble** — *bōnus, -a, -um* (6); *nōbilis, -e* (15)
- nobody** — *nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/ nūllā m./f.* (10)
- none** — *nūllus, -a, -um* (gen. *nūllius*) (9)
- nonetheless** — *tamen, adv.* (9)
- not** — *nōn* (1); *nē* (19); *haud* (23)
- and not** — *nec / neque* (8a)
- not at all** — *haud* (23)
- not only ... but also** — *nōn solum ... sed etiam* (9); *nōn modō ... sed etiam* (13)
- not even** — *nē ... quidem* (19)
- not yet** — *nōndum* (14)
- nothing** — *nihil* (1)
- noun** — *nōmen, nōminis, n.* (5)
- nourish, to nourish** — *alō, alere, aluī, altum* (14)
- now** — *iam* (6); *nunc* (4)
- number** — *numerus, -ī, m.* (2b)
- oath, to take an oath** — *iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātum* (21)
- obtain, to obtain** — *trahō, trahere, trāxī, tractum* (9); *parō* [1] (15); *consequor, consequī, consecūtus sum* (20)
- occasion** — *tempus, temporis, n.* (5)
- occasionally** — *interdum, adv.* (17)
- offer, to offer** — *dō, dāre, dedī, datum* (7)

- office** — honor, honoris, m. (5)  
**officer** — magister, magistrī, m. (4)  
**often** — saepe (6)  
**oh that...** — (*introduces a wish*) utinam (19)  
**old** — senex (12)  
**old age** — senectūs, senectūtis, f. (10)  
**old man/woman** — senex, senis, m./f. (12)  
**on** — in (prep. + abl.) (3)  
**on account of** — propter (prep. + acc.) (3)  
**on behalf of** — prō (prep. + abl.) (10)  
**once** — ōlim, adv. (15); quondam, adv. (23)  
**one** — ūnus, -a, -um (gen. ūnius) (9, 22)  
**only** — sōlus, -a, -um (gen. sōlius) (9)  
**not only ... but also** — nōn solum ... sed etiam (9); nōn modō ... sed etiam (13)  
**open, to open** — patefaciō, patefacere, patefēcī, patefactum (16)  
**opinion** — sententia, sententiae, f. (2a); iūdicium, iūdicīi, n. (19)  
**opposite** — diversus, -a, -um (14); contrā (prep. + acc.) (10)  
**oppress, to oppress** — opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum (20)  
**or** — aut (5)  
**orator** — ōrātor, ōrātōris, m. (13)  
**order, to order** — iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum (16)  
**origin** — genus, generis, n. (17)  
**other** — alius, alia, aliud (gen. alterius) (9); ceterus, -a, -um (14)  
**some ... others** — aliī ... aliī (9)  
**one thing ... another** — aliud ... aliud (9)  
**on the other side of** — ultrā (prep. + acc.) (20)  
**other** (of two) — alter, altera, alterum (gen. alterius) (9)  
**ought** — dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum (8b)  
**our** — noster, nostra, nostrum (6)  
**out** — ex (prep. + abl.) (3)  
**out, to go out** — egredior, egredi, egressus sum (20)  
**overcome, to over** — superō, superāre, superāvī, superātum (7)  
**overpower, to overpower** — opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum (20)  
**overwhelm, to overwhelm** — opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum (20)  
**owe, to owe** — dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum (8b)  
**own, his/her/its/their/one's own** — suus, -a, -um (14)  
**parent** — parens, parentis, m./f. (15)  
**part** — pars, partis, f. (12)  
**partiality** — grātia, -ae, f. (3)  
**pass away, to pass away** — pereō, perire, perivī (or perii), peritum (4)  
**passage** (in a book) — locus, -i, m. (pl. loci) (9)  
**path** — iter, itineris, n. (24)  
**patience** — patientia, -ae, f. (14)  
**peace** — pāx, pācis, f. (5)  
**peace** (and quiet) — ōtium, ōtīi, n. (4)  
**pen** — stilus, stilī, m.  
**penalty** — poena, poenae, f. (11)  
**penalty, to pay a penalty** — poenam dare (11)  
**people** — populus, populī, m. (2a)  
**people, belonging to the people** — pūblicus, -a, -um (13)  
**perceive, to perceive** — sentiō, sentire, sēnsī, sensum (11); cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum (21)  
**perform** — gerō, -ere, gessī, gestum (6)  
**perhaps** — forsitan, adv. (often with the subjunctive) (19)  
**period of life** — aetās, aetātis, f. (15)  
**period of time** — tempestās, -tātis, f. (13)  
**perish, to perish** — pereō, perire, perivī (or perii), peritum (4)  
**permit, to permit** — patior, pati, passus sum (20)  
**perpetual** — perpetuus, -a, -um (8a)  
**person** — homō, hominis, m. (5)  
**pertain to, to pertain to concern** — pertineō, -ēre, -tenuī, -tentum (21)  
**philosopher** — philosophus, -i, m. (11)  
**philosophy** — philosophia, -ae, f. (8a)  
**physician** — medicus, -i, m. (9)  
**pick** (flowers) — carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum (23)  
**place** — locus, -i, m. (9)  
**place, to place** — pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum (21)

- places** — loca, -ōrum, n. pl. (9)  
**in that place** — illic, adv.  
**in this place** — hīc, adv.
- plan** — cōnsilium, cōnsiliī, n. (8a); ratiō, ratiōnis, f. (9)
- pleasant** — iūcundus, -a, -um (12); secundus, -a, -um (21)
- pleasure** — voluptās, voluptātis, f. (9); dēlectātiō -tiōnis, f. (16)
- plots** — insidiae, -ārum, f. pl. (10)
- poem** — carmen, carminis, n. (5)
- poet** — poēta, poētae, m. (2a)
- poison** — venēnum, -ī, n. (14)
- ponder, to ponder** — cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum (7)
- port** — portus, portūs, m. (18)
- possess** — habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum (7); teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum (11)
- pour, to pour** — fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum (15)
- poverty** — paupertās, -ātis, f. (13)
- power** — imperium, imperiī, n. (15); potestās, -tātis, f. (10); vīs, vīs, f. (12)
- powerful** — potens (12)
- practice** — mōs, mōris, m. (5)
- praise** — glōria, glōriae, f. (8a), laus, laudis, f. (10)
- praise, to praise** — laudō, laudāre, laudāvī, laudātum (7)
- prepare** — parō [1] (15)
- presence, in the presence of** — apud (prep. + acc.) (10)
- present, to be present** — adsum, adesse, adfuī, adfutūrus (14)
- preserve, to preserve** — cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātum (7); servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum (7)
- press** — premō, premere, pressī, pressum (26)
- prevent** — prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum (21)
- pretty** — bellus, -a, -um (6)
- private** — privātus, -a, -um (13)
- prize** — praemium, -iī, n. (17)
- proclaim** — (pro)nūntiō, nūntiāre, nūntiāvī, nūntiātum (16)
- produce, to produce** — creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum (13); gigno, gignere, genuī, genitum (17)
- profit** — fructus, fructūs, m. (18)
- prohibit** — prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum (21)
- promise** — fides, fideī, f. (18)
- property** — ager, agrī, m. (2b)
- protect** — dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum (17); tueor, tuērī, tutus sum (20)
- protection** — fides, fideī, f. (18)
- provide** — parō [1] (15)
- public** — pūblicus, -a, -um (13)
- punishment** — poena, poenae, f. (11)  
**punished, to be punished** — poenam dare (11)
- pupil** — discipula, -ae, f. (9); discipulus, -ī, m. (9)
- purpose** — finis, fīnis, m. (20)
- pursue, to pursue** — insequor, insequī, insecūtus sum (20); persequor, persequī, persecūtus sum (20); premō, premere, pressī, pressum (26)
- push, to push** — pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum (21)
- put, to put** — pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum (21)
- queen** — rēgīna, -ae, f. (4)
- quick** — celer, celeris, celere (12)
- quickly** — cito (17); celeriter (23)
- quiet, to be quiet** — taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum (15)
- race** — gens, gentis, f. (17)
- rage** — ira, irae, f. (2a)
- raise, to raise (up)** — tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum (21)
- read, to read** — legō, -ere, lēgī, lēctum (1)
- read, to read aloud** — recitō, recitāre, recitāvī, recitātum (17)
- real** — vērus, -a, -um (6)
- reality** — vēritās, -tātis, f. (5)
- reason (as cause)** — causa, causae, f. (4); ratiō, ratiōnis, f. (9)
- reason (as mental faculty)** — ratiō, ratiōnis, f. (9)
- receive** — admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum (17); recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum (19)
- recently** — nūper, adv. (11)
- recite** — recitō, recitāre, recitāvī, recitātum (17)
- reckon, to reckon** — putō, putāre, putāvī, putātum (16)

- reckoning** — *ratio, ratiōnis*, f. (9)
- recognize, to recognize** — (*cog*)*noscō, noscere*, *nōvī, nōtum* (16)
- recollection** — *memoria, memoriae*, f. (13)
- refined** — *hūmānus, -a, -um* (6)
- regain, to regain** — *recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum* (19)
- region** — *terra, -ae, f.* (3)
- reign** — *regnum, regnī*, n. (16)
- rejoice** — *gaudeo, -ēre, gavisus sum* (11, 20)
- relate to, to relate to** — *pertineō, -ēre, -tenuī, -tentum* (21)
- release, to release** — *mittō, -ere, mīsī, missum* (3)
- relief** — *sōlācium, sōlāciū*, n. (20)
- remain, to remain** — *maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum* (7); *remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, remānsum* (7)
- remaining, the remaining** — *ceterus, -a, -um* (14)
- remedy** — *remedium, remediū*, n. (9)
- remember, to remember** — *meminī, meminisse* (*defective*) (16)
- remembering** — *memor* (*gen. memoris*) (19)
- remove, to remove** — *tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum* (21)
- renowned** — *clārus, -a, -um* (8a)
- reply, to reply** — *rēspōndeō, rēspōndēre, rēspōndī, rēspōnsum* (16)
- report** — *fāma, fāmae, f.* (2b)
- report, to report** — *trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum* (3)
- republic** — *rēs publica, rēi publicae, f.* (18)
- reputation** — *fāma, fāmae, f.* (2b)
- repute** — *fāma, fāmae, f.* (2b); *nōmen, nōminis, n.* (5)
- rescue, to rescue** — *ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum* (21)
- resembling** (*adj.*) — *similis, -e* (12)
- respected** — *honestus, -a, -um* (17)
- respond, to respond** — *rēspōndeō, rēspōndēre, rēspōndī, rēspōnsum* (16)
- rest, the rest** — *ceterus, -a, -um* (14)
- restrain** — *prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum* (21)
- return, to return** — *redeō, redire, redivī* (*or adii*), *reditum* (4)
- in return for** — *prō* (10)
- restrain** — *teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum* (11)
- reward** — *praemium, -iī, n.* (17)
- rich** — *dīves, dīvitis* (*gen*) (15)
- riches** — *dīvitiae, dīvitiārum, f. pl.* (13)
- right, a right** — *iūs, iūris, n.* (12)
- right** — *dexter, dextra, dextrum* (18)
- rise, to rise** — *orior, orirī, ortus sum* (20)
- risk** — *periculum, periculī, n.* (2a)
- river** — *flūmen, flūminis, n.* (13)
- road** — *via, -ae, f.* (6)
- Roman** — *Rōmānus, -a, -um* (6)
- Rome** — *Rōma, -ae, f.* (3)
- Romewards, to Rome** — *Rōmam* (1)
- rose** — *rosa, -ae, f.* (3)
- rough** — *asper, aspera, asperum* (15)
- rule, to rule** — *regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum* (1)
- rule** — *regnum, regnī, n.* (16)
- rumour** — *fāma, fāmae, f.* (2b)
- run, to run** — *currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum* (13)
- running, a running** — *cursus, -us, m.* (20)
- rush, to rush** — *currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum* (13)
- safe** — *salvus, -a, -um* (8a); *tūtus, -a, -um* (16)
- safe, to keep safe** — *cōnservō, cōnservāre, cōnservāvī, cōnservātum* (7); *servō, servāre, servāvī, servātum* (7)
- safety** — *salūs, salūtis, f.* (16)
- sail, to sail** — *nāvigō, nāvigāre, nāvigāvī, nāvigātum* (17)
- sailor** — *nauta, nautae, m.* (2a)
- sake** —  
**for the sake of** — *prō + abl.* (10); *causā + genitive* (15)
- same, the same** — *īdem, eadem, idem* (11)
- at the same time** — *simul* (23)
- at the same time as** — *simul ac or simul atque* (23)
- sane** — *sānus, -a, -um* (8a)
- satisfactorily** — *bene* (1)

- satisfy, to satisfy** — satiō, satiāre, satiāvī, satiātum (7)
- say, to say** — dīcō, -ere, dīxī, dictum (1); loquor, loquī, locūtus sum (20); aiō, aiit, aiunt (16)
- he/she says/said** (defective) — inquit (21)
- scarcely** — vix (23)
- school** — lūdus, lūdī, m. (20)
- sea** — mare, maris, n. (12)
- seal** — signum, signī, n. (2b)
- season** — tempestās, tempestātis, f. (13)
- seat** — sēdes, sēdis, m. (24)
- second** — secundus, -a, -um (22)
- see, to see** — videō, vidēre, vidī, vīsum (7)
- seek, to seek** — petō, petere, petivī, petitum (21); quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum (24)
- seem, to seem** — videor, vidērī, vīsum sum (21)
- seize, to seize** — capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum (2a); rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum (21)
- senate** — senātus, senātūs, m. (18)
- send, to send** — mittō, -ere, misī, missum (2)
- send away, to send away** — amittō, -ere, amisi, amissum (11)
- sense** — sensus, sensūs, m. (18)
- sentence** — sententia, sententiae, f. (2a)
- sentiment** — sententia, sententiae, f. (2a)
- seventh** — septimus, -a, -um (22)
- serious** — gravis, -e (12)
- servant** — servus, -ī, m. (4)
- servitude** — servitūs, servitūtis, f. (17)
- set, to set** — pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum (21)
- set forth, to set forth** (go) — proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (20)
- set out, to set out** (go) — proficīscor, proficīscī, profectus sum (20)
- seven** — septem (22)
- severe** — ācer, ācris, ācre (12)
- shadow** — umbra, umbrae, f. (17)
- shape** — forma, -ae, f. (4)
- share** — pars, partis, f. (12)
- shared** — communis, -e (15)
- sharp** — ācer, ācris, ācre (12)
- sharp edge** — aciēs, aciēi, f. (18)
- sharpness** — aciēs, aciēi, f. (18)
- savage** — ferōx, *gen. ferōcis* (16)
- she** — ea (*gen. eius*) (10); haec (*gen. huius*) (9); illa (*gen. illius*) (9)
- ship** — nāvis, nāvis, f. (15)
- shore** — lītus, lītoris, n. (19)
- short** — brevis, -e (12)
- show, to show** — doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum (8b); dēmonstrō [1] (10); ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum (16);
- shrine** — templum, -ī, n. (3)
- shun, to shun** — fugiō, -ere, fūgī, fugitūrum (2a); vitō [1] (7)
- sickness** — morbus, -ī, m. (9)
- side, on the other side of** — ultrā (*prep. + acc.*) (20)
- sign, signal** — signum, signī, n. (2b)
- silent, to be silent** — taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum (15)
- similar to** — similis, -e (12)
- since** — quoniam (9)
- single** — ūnus, -a, -um (*gen. ūnius*) (9, 21)
- sister** — soror, sorōris, f. (5)
- sit, to sit** — sedeō, sedēre, sedī, sessum (24)
- six** — sex (22)
- sixth** — sextus, -a, -um (22)
- skill** — ars, artis, f. (12)
- skilled** — doctus, -a, -um (15)
- sky** — caelum, -ī, n. (3)
- slave** — servus, -ī, m. (4)
- slavery** — servitūs, servitūtis, f. (17)
- slay, to slay** — necō, necāre, necāvī, necātum (9); occidō, occidēre, occidī, occisum (24)
- slender** — gracilis, -e (23)
- small** — parvus, -a, -um (6)
- smallest** — minimus, -a, -um (6)
- snatch, to snatch** (away) — rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum (21)
- soil** — terra, -ae, f. (3)
- soldier** — miles, militis, m. (10)
- so** — sic (23)
- so many** — tot (*adv.*)
- some** — nōnnūllus, -a, -um (*gen. nōnnūllius*) (9)

- some ... others** — alii ... alii (9)
- someone** — aliquis, aliquid (gen. alicuius, dat. alicui) (20)
- something** — aliquis, aliquid (gen. alicuius, dat. alicui) (20)
- sometimes** — interdum, adv. (17)
- son** — filius, -i, m. (3)
- song** — carmen, carminis, n. (5)
- sort** — genus, generis, n. (17)
- soul** — animus, animi, m. (8a); spīritus, spīritūs, m. (18)
- sound** — sānus, -a, -um (8a)
- speech** — lingua, -ae, f. (15)
- speak, to speak** — dicō, -ere, dixi, dictum (1); loquor, loquī, locūtus sum (20)
- speaker** — ōrātor, ōrātōris, m. (13)
- spirit** — spīritus, spīritūs, m. (18)
- spirits, high spirits** — animi, -ōrum, m. pl. (8a)
- sport** — lūdus, lūdī, m. (20)
- stand, to stand** — stō, stāre, steti, statum (11)
- star** — sidus, sideris, n. (20)
- state** — civitās, civitātis, f. (5); rēs publica, rēi publicae, f. (18)
- statute** — lēx, lēgis, f. (5)
- stay, to stay** — maneō, manēre, mānsi, mānsūm (7); remaneō, remanēre, remānsi, remānsūm (7)
- step forth, to step forth** — progredior, progredi, progressus sum (20)
- step out, to step out** — egredior, egredi, egressus sum (20)
- steps, to take steps** — gradior, gradi, gressus sum (20)
- still** — tamen (postpositive) (9)
- stir up, to stir up** — misceō, miscēre, miscui, mixtum (19)
- stop** — dēsino, -ere, -sivī, -situm (8b)
- storm** — tempestās, tempestātis, f. (13)
- story** — fābula, fābulae, f. (2)
- straight** — rectus, -a, -um (17)
- street** — via, -ae, f. (6)
- strength** — vīres, vīrium, f. pl. (12)
- strike down, to** — occidō, occidēre, occidī, occisum (24)
- strive, to strive** — labōrō [1] (10)
- strong** — fortis, -e (12); potens (12)
- student** — discipula, -ae, f. (9); discipulus, -i, m. (9)
- study** — studium, -iī, n. (10)
- suddenly** — repente (23)
- suffer, to suffer** — labōrō [1] (10); patior, pati, passus sum (20)
- summon, to summon** — vocō [1] (7)
- supply** — cōpia, -ae, f. (9)
- supplies** — cōpiae, -arum, f. pl. (9)
- support, to support** — alō, alere, alui, altum (14)
- suppose, to suppose** — existimō [1] (16); putō [1] (16); arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum (20)
- suppress** — opprimō, opprimere, oppressi, oppressum (20)
- sure** — certus, -a, -um (13)
- surely** — vērō (adv.) (23)
- surrender, to surrender** — trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum (3)
- sustain** — alō, alere, alui, altum (14)
- swear, to swear** — iūrō, iūrāre, iūrāvī, iūrātum (21)
- sweet** — dulcis, -e (12)
- swift** — celer, celeris, celere (12)
- swiftly** — celeriter (adv.) (23)
- sword** — ferrum, ferrī, n. (17)
- system** — ratiō, ratiōnis, f. (9)
- take, to take** — capiō, -ere, cēpī, captum (2a); sūmō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum (16)
- take away** — ēripiō, -ere, ēripiū, ēreptum (22)
- take back** — recipiō, -ere, recēpī, receptum (19)
- take out** — excipiō, -ere, excēpī, exceptum (19)
- take up** — sūmō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum (16)
- task** — cūra, cūrae, f. (8a); labor, labōris, m. (5)
- teach, to teach** — doceō, docēre, docui, doctum (8b)
- teacher** — magister, magistrī, m. (4)
- tell, to tell** — doceō, docēre, docui, doctum (8b); nārrō [1] (16)
- temple** — templum, -i, n. (3)
- ten** — decem (22)
- tenth** — decimus, -a, -um (22)
- terrify, to terrify** — terreō, -ēre, terrui, territum (7)

- test, to test** — probō [1] (16)
- thank, to thank** (someone) — grātiās agere + dative (3)
- that** — ille, illa, illud (gen. illius) (9)
- that** (of yours) — iste, ista, istud (gen. istius) (9)
- that** — quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. (16)
- themselves** —  
— (intensive) ipse, ipsa, ipsum (15)  
— (reflexive) suī, sibi, sē, sē (15)
- then** — ibi (6); iam (6); tum (5); deinde (14); dehinc (16)
- there** — ibi (6)
- to there** — illic, adv.
- from there** — illinc, adv.
- therefore** — ergō (7); iam (6); igitur (postpositive) (8b); itaque (14)
- thereupon** — deinde, adv. (14)
- these** — hīc, haec, hōc (gen. huius) (9)
- they** — is, ea, id (gen. eius) (10); hīc, haec, hōc (gen. huius) (9); ille, illa, illud (gen. illius) (9)
- time of life** — aetas, aetātis, f. (15)
- time, at one time** — ōlim, adv. (15)
- thin** — gracilis, -e (23)
- thing** — rēs, rēi, f. (18)
- think, to think** — arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum (20); cōgitō [1] (7); existimō [1] (16); putō [1] (16); sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sensum (11)
- third** — tertius, -a, -um (22)
- this** — hīc, haec, hōc (gen. huius) (9)
- thither** — illūc, adv.
- those** (of his) — ille, illa, illud (gen. illius) (9)
- those** (of yours) — iste, ista, istud (gen. istius) (9)
- thought** — mēns, mēntis, f. (12)
- thousand** — mille (22)
- thousands** — milia, milium, n. pl. (22)
- three** — trēs, tria (22)
- through** — per (prep. + acc.) (4)
- through the agency of** — ab or ā (prep. + abl.) (4)
- throw out, to throw out** — ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum (14)
- throw, to throw** — iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum (14)
- thus** — sīc (23)
- time** — aetās, aetātis, f. (15); hōra, -ae, f. (6); tempus, temporis, n. (5)
- at that time, then** — ōlim (15), tum (5)
- at the same time** — simul (23)
- at this time, now** — iam (6)
- for a long time** — diū, adv. (11)
- to** — ad (prep. + acc.) (3)
- to/for me** (dative) — mihi (4)
- to/for you** (dative) — tibi (4)
- today** — hodiē (4)
- toil, to toil** — laborō [1] (5)
- toil** (n.) — labor, labōris, m. (5)
- tolerate, to tolerate** — tolerō, tolerāre, tolerāvī, tolerātum (8b)
- tomorrow** — crās (4)
- too** — nimis or nimium (adv.) (22)
- too little** — parum, adv. (22)
- too much** — nimis or nimium (adv.) (22), nimium, -ī n. (22)
- tooth** — dens, dentis, m. (14)
- touch, to touch** — tangō, -ere, tetigī, tactum (2)
- tongue** — lingua, -ae, f. (15)
- towards** — ad (prep. + acc.) (3)
- tradition** — fāma, fāmae, f. (2b)
- transmit, to transmit** — trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum (3)
- treachery** — insidiae, -ārum, f. pl. (10)
- tree** — arbor, arbōris, f. (18)
- trial** — iūdicium, iūdicīi, n. (19)
- trick** — fallō, -ere, fefellī, falsum (6)
- troops** — cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl. (9)
- true** — vērus, -a, -um (6)
- truly** — enim (postpositive) (7); vērō (23)
- trust** — fides, fideī, f. (18)
- trust in** (somebody + dative) — crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum (16)
- truth** — vērītās, -tātis, f. (5)
- try, to try** — cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum (20); temptō, temptāre, temptāvī, temptātum (8b)
- turn, to turn** — vertō, vertere, vertī, versum (20)



- turn** (something) **away from** — avertō, avertere, avertī, aversum
- twelve** — duodecim (22)
- twenty** — vīgintī (22)
- two** — duo, duae, duo (22)
- type** — genus, generis, n. (17)
- tyrant** — tyrannus, -ī, m. (3)
- ugly** — turpis, -e (23)
- uncertain** — incertus, -a, -um (13)
- be uncertain, to** — dubitō [1] (24)
- under** (moving) — sub (prep. + acc.) (10)
- under** (stationary) — sub (prep. + abl.) (10)
- understand, to understand** — intellegō, intellegere, intellēxī, intellēctum (2b); (cog)noscō, noscere, nōvī, nōtum (16)
- unfortunate** — miser, misera, miserum (15)
- unfriendly** — inimīcus, -a, -um (11)
- unless** — nisi (4)
- unlike** — dissimilis, -e (12)
- unsure** — incertus, -a, -um (13)
- unwilling, to be unwilling** — volō, velle, voluī (14)
- up to** — ad (prep. + abl.) (3); in (prep. + abl.) (3)
- upright** — rectus, -a, -um (17)
- uprightness** — probitas, probitātis, f. (20)
- uproar** — turba, -ae, f. (12)
- urge, to urge** — hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum (20)
- us** — nōs, nostrum/nostri, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs (10)
- use** — ūsus, usūs, m. (18)
- use, to use** — ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum (+ abl.) (20)
- useful** — ūtilis, -e (19)
- utterance** — lingua, -ae, f. (15)
- value, to value highly** — diligō, diligere, dilēxī, dilēctum (13)
- verse** (of poetry) — versus, versūs, m. (18)
- very, the very** — ipse, ipsa, ipsum, intensive pron. (15)
- very bad** — pessimus, -a, -um (6)
- very good** — optimus, -a, -um (6)
- very great** — maximus, -a, -um (6)
- very near** — proximus, -a, -um (8a)
- very small** — minimus, -a, -um (6)
- vice** — vitium, vitīi, n. (8a)
- victory** — victōria, -ae, f. (3)
- violence** — vīs, vīs, f. (12)
- virgin** — virgō, virginis, f. (5)
- virtue** — virtūs, virtūtis, f. (5)
- virtuous** — rectus, -a, -um (17)
- voice** — vōx, vōcis, f. (5)
- wage war** — bellum gerere (6)
- waiver** — dubitō [1] (24)
- walk, to walk** — gradior, gradī, gressus sum (20)
- wander, to wander** — errō, errāre, errāvī, errātum (7)
- want, to want** — volō, velle, voluī (14)
- war** — bellum, bellī, n. (4)
- warn, to warn** — moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum (7)
- water** — aqua, aquae, f. (2a)
- way** — modus, -ī, m. (13); iter, itineris, n. (24)
- we** — nōs, nostrum/nostri, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs (10)
- wealth** — divitiae, divitiārum, f. pl. (13)
- weapons** — arma, -ōrum, n. pl. (3)
- weather** — tempestās, -tātis, f. (13)
- well** — bene (1)
- to be well** — valeō [1] (7); valeō [1] (7)
- what?** — quī, quae, quod, interrog. adj. (14)
- whatever** — quidquid (18)
- when** — quandō (4), ubi (4), ut (23)
- when...?** — quandō (4)
- whence** — unde (10)
- where** — ubi (4)
- to where?** — quō (1)
- from where?** — unde (10)
- wherefore** — quārē (9)
- whether ... or** — utrum ... an (19)
- which** (of two)...? — uter, -tra, -trum (gen. utrius) (9)
- which** — quī, quae, quod, rel.pron. (17)
- which?** — quī, quae, quod (14)
- while** — dum (1)
- who** — quī, quae, quod, rel.pron. (17)
- who...? what...?** — quis, quid (14)

- whole** — *tōtus*, -a, -um (gen. *tōtius*) (9)  
**whoever** — *quisquis* (18)  
**why** — *cur*, adv. (19), *quārē* (9)  
**why?** — *quid?* (1), *quārē* (9)  
**wickedness** — *scelus*, *sceleris*, n. (19)  
**wife** — *uxor*, *uxōris*, f. (5)  
**willing, to be willing** — *volō*, *velle*, *voluī* (14)  
**window** — *fenestra*, -ae, f. (15)  
**wine** — *vīnum*, *vīnī*, n. (2a)  
**wipe out** — *dēlēō*, *dēlēre*, *dēlēvī*, *dēlētum* (17)  
**wisdom** — *sapientia*, *sapientiae*, f. (2a)  
**wise** — *sapiēns*, gen. *sapientis* (14)  
**wisely** — *sapienter* (23)  
**wish, to wish** — *volō*, *velle*, *voluī* (14)  
**with** — *cum* (prep. + abl.) (3)  
    **with me** — *mēcum* (3)  
    **with us** — *nōbiscum* (3)  
    **with you** (sg.) — *tēcum* (3)  
    **with you** (pl.) — *vōbiscum* (3)  
    **with him-/hers-/itself/themselves** — *sēcum* (15)  
**withdraw, to withdraw** — *cēdō*, *cēdere*, *cessī*, *cessum* (+ dat.) (19)  
**without** — *sine* (prep. + abl.) (3)  
    **without, to be without** (+ *abl. of separation*) — *careō*, *carēre*, *caruī*, *caritūrus* (18)  
**wolf** — *lupus*, -ī, m. (2b)  
**woman** — *fēmina*, *fēminae*, f. (2a)  
**word** — *verbum*, *verbī*, n. (2)  
**work** — *labor*, *labōris*, m. (5)  
**work, to work** — *labōrō*, *labōrāre*, *labōrāvī*, *labōrātum* (10)  
**world** — *mundus*, -ī, m. (11)  
**worship, to worship** — *colō*, -ere, *coluī*, *cultum* (13)  
**worst** — *pessimus*, -a, -um (6)  
**worth** — *virtūs*, *virtūtis*, f. (5)  
**wretched** — *miser*, *miserā*, *miserum* (15)  
**write, to write** — *scrībō*, -ere, *scrīpsī*, *scrīptum* (1)  
**writer** — *scrīptor*, *scrīptōris*, m. (5)  
**year** — *annus*, *annī*, m. (6)  
**yesterday** — *herī* (4)  
**yet, not yet** — *nōndum* (14)  
**yield, to yield, yield to** — *cēdō*, *cēdere*, *cessī*, *cessum* (+ dat.) (19)  
**you** (pl.) — *vōs*, *vestrum*/*vestrī*, *vōbīs*, *vōs*, *vōbīs* (10)  
**you** (sg.) — *tū*, *tuī*, *tibi*, *tē*, *tē* (10)  
**young** — *iuvenis*, *iuvene* (12)  
**your** (sg.) — *tuus*, -a, -um (6)  
**your** (pl.) — *vester*, *vestra*, *vestrum* (6)  
**youthful** — *iuvenis*, -is (12)  
**zeal** — *studium*, -ī, n. (10)





# Vocabulary

---

LATIN—ENGLISH

\* numbers in parentheses following a definition refer to the relevant chapter; verbs of the first conjugation, whose principle parts are -ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, are marked as [1]

- ne** — (added to the first word of a sentence to make a question) (1)
- que** — and (enclitic particle added to a word to attach it to what went before) (5)
- ab** or **ā** — (prep. + abl.) from, away from; by, through the agency of (4)
- absentia, -ae, f.** — absence
- absolutē** — completely
- absum, abesse, āfui, āfutūrus** — to be absent, be away (14)
- ac** (or **atque**) — and (10)
- accipiō, accipere, accēpī, acceptum** — accept (19)
- ācer, ācris, ācre** — sharp, severe, fierce (12)
- acriter** — (adv.) keenly, fiercely (23)
- acerbus, -a, -um** — bitter, harsh (11)
- aciēs, aciēi, f.** — a sharp edge; sharpness; line of battle; battle (18)
- acquisitiō, -tiōnis, f.** — acquisition
- actus, actūs, m.** — an act
- ad** — (prep. + acc.) to, towards, up to; against (3)
- addō, addere, addidī, additum** — add, augment; place upon (29)
- adeō, adīre, adīvī** (or **adii**), **aditum** — to go to/ towards; approach (4)
- adiuvō, adiuuāre, adiuvī, adiūtum** — to help, aid, assist (7)
- admīrōr, -āri, admīrātus sum** — admire
- admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum** — to admit, receive, let in (17)
- adsum, adesse, adfui, adfutūrus** — to be present (14)
- adulēscēntia, -ae f.** — youth, adolescence
- adveniō, advenīre, advēnī, adventum** — arrive, approach
- adversus, -a, -um** — opposite, adverse (26)
- adverto, -ere** — turn
- advocātus, -ī, m.** — an advocate; a lawyer
- aedificō [1]** — to build
- aeger, aegra, aegrum** — unwell, sick, ill (21)
- aegritūdo, -dinis, f.** — sickness, illness
- aegrōtō [1]** — to be sick
- aequitās, -tātis, f.** — equity, fairness (14)
- aequus, -a, -um** — equal, just; level, even (14)
- aetas, aetātis, f.** — period of life, life, age, an age, time (15)
- ager, agrī, m.** — field; land, property (2b)
- agō, agēre, ēgī, actum** — to do, to act; to drive; to lead (1)
- agricola, -ae, m.** — farmer (4)
- āiō, ait, aiunt** — he/she says, they say (16)
- aliēnus, -a, -um** — belonging to another; foreign, alien (14)
- aliī ... aliī** — some ... others (9)
- aliquando** — at some time, sometimes (24)
- aliquis, aliquid** (gen. *alicuius*, dat. *alicui*) — someone, something (20)
- aliter** — differently, otherwise
- aliter ... aliter** — in one way ... in another way
- aliud ... aliud** — one thing ... another (9)
- alius, alia, aliud** (gen. *alterius*) — other, another; different (9)
- aliī ... aliī** — some ... others (9)
- alō, alere, aluī, altum** — to nourish, support, sustain, increase, cherish (14)
- alter, altera, alterum** (gen. *alterius*) — the other (of two) (9)
- altus, -a, -um** — high; deep (13)
- amator, -ōris, m.** — a lover
- ambitiō, -iōnis, f.** — ambition
- amīca, -ae, f.** — friend (feminine), girlfriend (2b)
- amīcitia, -ae, f.** — friendship (4)
- amīcus, -a, -um** — friendly, loving (11)
- amīcus, -ī, m.** — friend (masculine) (2b)
- āmittō, -ere, āmīsī, āmissum** — to lose, let go; send away (11)
- amō, amāre, amāvī, amātum** — to love, like (7)
- amor, amōris, m.** — love (5)
- an** — or (13)
- animal, animālis, n.** — a living creature, animal (12)
- animōsitās, -tātis, f.** — animosity; wrath

- animus, -ī, m.** — mind, soul (8a)  
**animī, -ōrum, m. pl.** — high spirits; courage (8a)  
**annus, -ī, m.** — year (6)  
**ante** — (prep. + acc.) before (9)  
**ante** — (adv.) previously  
**antequam** — before (22)  
**antiquus, -a, -um** — ancient (6)  
**aper, aprī, m.** — wild boar  
**appellō, appellāre, appellāvī, appellātum** — to speak, address, call, name (15)  
**appeto, -ere** — strive for, reach after  
**apud** — (prep. + acc.) among, in the presence of, at the house of; near, beside (10)  
**aqua, aquae, f.** — water (2a)  
**arbītrium, -iī, n.** — judgment, decision; authority, power, will  
**arbitror, arbitrārī, arbitrātus sum** — to judge, suppose, think (20)  
**arbor, arbōris, f.** — tree (18)  
**argumentum, -ī, n.** — argument (21)  
**arma, -ōrum, n. pl.** — (only in plural) arms; weapons (3)  
**ars, artis, f.** — art, skill (12)  
**arx, arcis, f.** — citadel, stronghold (27)  
**ascendō, -ere, ascendī, ascensum** — ascend  
**asper, aspera, asperum** — rough, harsh (15)  
**aspiciō, aspicere, aspexī, aspectum** — look upon, look at, behold  
**at** — (conjunction) but, mind you, but, you say (21)  
**Athēnienses** — the Athenians  
**atque (or ac)** — and (10)  
**auctor, auctōris, m.** — author, originator (21)  
**auctōritās, -tātis, f.** — authority; influence; dignity (11)  
**audācia, -ae, f.** — audacity, temerity, insolence  
**audeō, audēre, ausus sum** — to dare (8b)  
**audiō, audire, audīvī, auditum** — to hear, listen to (2a)  
**augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum** — to increase, enlarge, augment (21)  
**auris, auris, f.** — ear (12)  
**aurum, -ī, n.** — gold; money (24)  
**aut** — or (5)  
**aut ... aut** — either ... or (8b)  
**autem** — (*postpositive*) however; moreover, furthermore, indeed (8b)  
**auxilium, -iī, n.** — help, assistance; reinforcements (27)  
**avāritia, -ae, f.** — greed; avarice  
**avārus, -a, -um** — greedy (6)  
**avertō, avertere, avertī, aversum** — to turn something away from, avert, divert  
**balneum, -eī, n.** — a bath  
**bāsium, bāsī, n.** — kiss (22)  
**beātus, -a, -um** — blessed, happy (8a)  
**bellum, bellī, n.** — war (4)  
**bellum gerere** — to wage war (6)  
**bellus, -a, -um** — beautiful, pretty; fine, excellent (6)  
**bene** — well, satisfactorily (1)  
**benedicō, -ere** — to bless (+ dative)  
**beneficium, beneficiī, n.** — benefit, kindness, favour (19)  
**bibō, bibēre, bibī** — to drink (2a)  
**bis** — twice  
**bonitās, -tātis, f.** — goodness  
**bonus, -a, -um** — good, fine, excellent; noble (6)  
**brevis, -e** — short, small, brief (12)  
**cadāver, -eris, n.** — cadaver, corpse  
**cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum** — to fall (11)  
**caecus, -a, -um** — blind (17)  
**caelum, -ī, n.** — sky; heaven (3)  
**calix, -icis, m.** — cup, goblet  
**candidātus, -ī, m.** — a candidate (for office)  
**canis, -is, m./f.** — dog (27)  
**capiō, capēre, cēpī, captum** — to take; catch, capture, seize; get (2a)  
**captivus, -a, -um** — captive  
**caput, capitis, n.** — head; heading, chapter (11)  
**careō, -ēre, -ui, -itūrus** — to be without, be deprived of, lack (+ abl. of separation) (18)  
**carmen, carminis, n.** — song, poem (5)  
**campus, -ī, m.** — field (28)

- carpō, carpere, carpsī, carptum** — pick, pluck, gather (flowers)
- cārus, -a, -um** — dear; expensive (11)
- casa, -ae, f.** — house, cottage, hut (15)
- castra, -ōrum, n.** — a military camp, an encampment (10)
- catēnae, -ārum, f.pl.,** — chains
- causa, -ae, f.** — a cause, reason; case (legal) (4)
- causā + genitive** — for the sake of (15)
- cautiō, -tiōnis, f.** — caution
- caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautum** — to be on guard against, beware (27)
- cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessum** — to yield, yield to (+ dat.); withdraw, go away from (19)
- celer, celeris, celere** — swift, quick, rapid (12)
- celeritās, -tātis, f.** — speed, quickness
- celeriter** — (adv.) swiftly, quickly (23)
- celerrimē** — most quickly
- cēlō [1]** — to conceal, keep secret (24)
- cēnō, cēnāre, cēnāvī, cēnātum** — to dine (7)
- census, censūs, m.** — census qualification, net worth
- centum** — one hundred (22)
- cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum** — to distinguish, discern, perceive (21)
- certē** — surely, certainly
- certō [1]** — to struggle, fight
- certus, -a, um** — certain, sure (13)
- cervisia, -ae, f.** — beer
- cervix, -īcis, f.** — neck
- cessō, -are** — (w. infinitive) to cease, stop
- ceterus, -a, -um** — the other, the rest, the remaining (14)
- charitās, -tātis, f.** — charity, love
- cibus, -ī, m.** — food
- cito** — (adv.) quickly (17)
- cīvis, cīvis, m./f.** — citizen (12)
- cīvitās, cīvitātis, f.** — state, citizenship (5)
- clārus, -a, -um** — clear, bright; famous, illustrious (8a)
- clemens, -ntis, adj.** — merciful (26)
- clēmētia, -ae, f.** — mildness, gentleness, mercy (13)
- coepī, coepisse, coeptum** — began (only perfect) (21)
- cōgitō, cōgitāre, cōgitāvī, cōgitātum** — to think, ponder, consider (7)
- cognitio, cognitiōnis, f.** — understanding
- cognoscō, -ere, cognōvī, cognitum** — recognize, perceive, understand (16)
- cōgō, cōgere, coēgi, coactum** — compel, force (cum + agō) (24)
- coliseus** — the Colosseum (i.e. the Flavian amphitheatre)
- colō, colere, coluī, cultum** — to cultivate; care for, attend to; worship (13)
- colōnia, -ae, f.** — colony
- colossus, -ī, m.** — a gigantic statue, a colossus
- comedō, -ere** — eat
- commeātus, -ūs, m.** — provisions, supplies
- commercium, -īi, n.** — commerce; business; communication, fellowship
- committō, committere, commīsī, commissum** — to entrust, commit (19)
- commodum, -ī, n.** — advantage, profit
- communis, -e** — shared, common (15)
- comoedia, -ae, f.** — comedy
- compassiō, -iōnis, f.** — compassion
- concedō, concedere** — to concede
- conciliātiō, -tiōnis, f.** — connection, union, bond
- concordia, -ae, f.** — harmony, concord
- concordō [1]** — agree together, harmonize
- condō, condere, condidit, conditum** — to found
- confidō, confidere, confisus sum** — trust in, rely on
- confirmō [1]** — to confirm
- confringo -ere** — to break into pieces
- confusio, -iōnis, f.** — confusion
- coniugātiō, -tiōnis, f.** — a joining, connecting
- coniugium, -ī, n.** — marriage, wedlock
- cōnor, cōnārī, cōnātus sum** — to try, attempt (20)
- consensus, consensūs, m.** — consent
- consentio, -ire** — to consent



- consequor, consequī, consecūtus sum** — obtain, acquire; follow (20)
- cōservō, cōservāre, cōservāvī, cōservātum** — to preserve, keep safe (7)
- cōsilium, cōsiliū, n.** — plan, purpose, counsel, advice, judgement (8a)
- consisto, -ere** — consist in/of; depend upon
- consociātiō, -tiōnis, f.** — association
- constituō, constituere, constituī, constitutum** — to decide, establish (24)
- cōsto, -āre, -stitī, -stātum** — consist (of)
- custōdiō, custōdire, custōdivī, custōditum** — to watch, guard
- constringo, -ere, -strinxī, -strictum** — to constrict, contrain; tie together
- consuētūdō, -inis, f.** — use; custom, habit
- consul, consulis, m.** — consul
- consūmō, -ere, -sumpsi, -sumptum** — to consume
- contemptum, -iī, n** — contempt
- contentus, -a, -um** — content, satisfied
- contineō, -ēre, -tinuī, -tentum** — contain, control (21)
- contrā** — (prep. + acc.) against, facing, opposite (10)
- contrā** — (adv.) on the other hand; by contrast
- contrārium, -iī n.** — an opposite, antithesis
- conturbō [1]** — to throw into confusion, disorder, confound
- cōpia, cōpiae, f.** — abundance; supply (9)
- cōpiae, -ārum, f. pl.** — supplies; troops, forces (9)
- cor, cordis, n.** — heart (12)
- cornu, cornūs, n.** — horn (18)
- corōna, -ae, f.** — crown
- corpus, corporis, n.** — body (5)
- corrīgō, corrīgere, correxī, correctum** — correct, improve
- cotidiē** — (adv.) daily, every day (19)
- cotidiānus** — daily
- crās** — tomorrow (4)
- crātēra, -ae, f.** — drinking bowl
- crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum** — trust in; believe (somebody: +dative) (16)
- creō, creāre, creāvī, creātum** — to create, produce; elect (to office, etc.) (13)
- crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus** — grow, increase (13)
- crūdēlis, -e** — unmerciful, hard-hearted, cruel (26)
- crūdēlitas, -tātis, f.** — cruelty
- cui...?** — to whom? or to what? (13)
- cuius...?** — whose? or of what? (2b, 13)
- culpa, culpaē, f.** — guilt, fault; blame (8a)
- culpō [1]** — to blame, censure; find fault with (7)
- cultūra, -ae, f.** — cultivation
- cultus, -ūs, m.** — cultivation (18)
- cum** — (prep. + abl.) with (3)
- cum** — (conj.) when (28)
- cupiditās, cupiditātis, f.** — desire, longing, passion; greed; lust (10)
- cupio, cupere, cupivī, cupitum** — to desire (8b)
- cur** — (adv.) why (19)
- cūra, cūrae, f.** — care, caution; a charge, task (8a)
- cūria, curiae, f.** — court
- cūrō [1]** — to care about, be concerned with
- currō, currere, cucurri, cursum** — to run, rush, move quickly (13)
- cursus, -us, m.** — a running, a race, a course (20)
- custōdiō, custōdire, custōdivī, custōditum** — to watch, guard (27)
- damnōsus, -a, -um** — injurious, harmful
- dē** — (prep. + abl.) about; from, down from (3)
- dea, -ae, f.** — goddess; female deity (note the irregular dative/ablative plural: **deabus**) (3)
- dēbeō, dēbere, dēbui, dēbitum** — to owe; ought, must (8b)
- dēbitōr, -ōris, m.** — a debtor
- dēbitum, -i, n.** — a debt
- decem** — ten (22)
- decimus, -a, -um** — tenth (22)
- decipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum** — deceive, ensnare (29)
- decorus, -a, -um** — fitting, proper, decorous (26)
- dēductio, -iōnis, f** — deduction
- deinde** — (adv.) thereupon, next, then (26)

- dēdiscō, -ere** — unlearn, forget  
**dedī** — *see* **dō** (7)  
**dēfendō, dēfendere, dēfendī, dēfensum** — to ward off, defend, protect (17)  
**dēficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** — fail, forsake; cease, disappear  
**dehinc** — (adv.) then, next (16)  
**dein** — then  
**deinde** — (adv.) thereupon, next, then (14)  
**dēlectatio -ōnis, f.** — pleasure, amusement (16)  
**dēlectō [1]** — to delight, amuse (14)  
**dēleō, dēlere, dēlēvī, dēlētum** — to destroy, wipe out, erase (17)  
**dēliberō [1]** — to deliberate  
**dēmōstrō [1]** — to show, demonstrate (10)  
**denique** — (adv.) finally (15)  
**dens, dentis, m.** — a tooth (14)  
**depellō, -ere** — to drive out  
**dēpōnō, -ere** — to depose, give testimony  
**dēsiderō [1]** — to desire, long for, miss (17)  
**dēsino, dēsinerē, dēsivī, dēsitum** — to cease, stop (8b)  
**dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum** — despise, hate  
**deus, -ī, m.** — a god, deity; God (dative/ablative plural is sometimes **dīs**; nominative plural is sometimes **dī**) (3)  
**dēvocō [1]** — call down  
**dexter, dextra, dextrum** — right, right-handed (18)  
**dī** — *see* **deus**  
**diabolicus, -a, -um** — devilish  
**dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum** — to say; speak (1)  
**dictum, -ī, n.** — statement  
**dies, diēi, m.** — day (18)  
**difficulter** — (adv.) with difficulty  
**difficilis, -e** — hard, difficult, troublesome (12)  
**digitus, -ī, m.** — finger (2)  
**dignitas, -tātis, f.** — dignity (14)  
**dignus, -a, -um** — (of people) worthy, deserving; (of things) suitable, fitting  
**diligentia, -ae, f.** — diligence  
**diligō, diligere, dilēxī, dilēctum** — to value or esteem highly, love, like (13)  
**dīmidium, -ī, n.** — a half (of something)  
**dīmittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum** — dismiss, let go; abandon, leave; forgive  
**directus, -a, -um** — upright, straight  
**discēdo, discēdere, discessī, discessum** — to go away, leave, end (19)  
**discessus, m.** — a going away, departure  
**disciplīna, -ae, f.** — instruction, training  
**discipula, -ae, f.** — pupil, student (female) (9)  
**discipulus, -ī, m.** — pupil, student (male) (9)  
**discō, discēre, didicī** — to learn (1)  
**discrimen, -minis, n.** — distinction, difference  
**dispositio, -tiōnis, f.** — disposition, application, management  
**disputatio, -iōnis, f.** — debate  
**dissensio, -iōnis, f.** — dissention  
**dissimilis, -e** — unlike, different (12)  
**distinguō, -ere, -stinxī, -stinctum** — to distinguish  
**disturbō [1]** — to disturb  
**diū** — (adv.) long, for a long time (11)  
**diversus, -a, -um** — different, diverse; opposite, contrary (14)  
**dīves, dīvitis** — rich (15)  
**dīvitiae, dīvitiārum, f. pl.** — riches, wealth (13)  
**dīvido, dīvidere, dīvisī, dīvisum** — to divide (21)  
**dīvīnus, -a, -um** — divine (27)  
**dō, dāre, dedī, datum** — to give, offer (7)  
**doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum** — to teach; tell, show (8b)  
**doctus, -a, -um** — learned, skilled; taught (15)  
**doleō, dolēre, dolui, dōlitūrum** — to grieve, suffer, hurt, give pain  
**dolor, -ōris, m.** — pain, ache; grief, anguish (28)  
**dolus, dolī, m.** — fraud, deceit, crime  
**domī** — (locative) at home  
**domina, -ae, f.** — mistress (4)  
**dominātiō, -ōnis, f.** — domination  
**dominus, -ī, m.** — master; lord; the Lord (4)

- domum** — (with a verb of motion) (to) home; homewards (1)
- domus, domūs, f.** — home, house (18)
- dōnum, -ī, n.** — gift (2)
- dormiō, dormīre** — to sleep
- dubitō [1]** — hesitate, waiver, be uncertain, doubt (24)
- dubius, -a, -um** — unknown, doubtful, dubious
- dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductum** — to lead (1)
- dulcis, -e** — sweet (12)
- dum** — while, so long as (1)
- duo, duae, duo** — two (21)
- duodecim** — twelve (21)
- dūrus, -a, -um** — hard (24)
- dux, ducis, m.** — leader, general (14)
- ē or ex** — (prep. + ablative) out, out of; from (3)
- eā** — by that way (28)
- ea** — she (subject) (2a, 10)
- eam** — her (object) (2a, 10)
- ēbrietās, -tātis** — drunkenness
- edō, esse, ēdī, esum** — to eat
- ēdūcō, ēdūcere, ēdūxī, ēductum** — to lead out (ex + ducere)
- educō, educare, educavi, educatum** — to bring up, educate (25)
- efficiō, -ere** — make
- egeō, egēre, eguī, egitūrus** — need (+ abl. of separation) (18)
- ego, meī, mihi, mē, mē** — I (10)
- egredior, egredī, egressus sum** — to step out, go out (20)
- ēiciō, ēicere, ēiēcī, ēiectum** — to throw out; drive out (14)
- eius** — his; her; its (2b, 5)
- elephantus, -ī, m.** — elephant
- ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlectum** — to pick out, choose
- ēligō, ēligere, ēlēgī, ēlectum** — to choose, pick out, elect (27)
- ēloquentia, -ae, f.** — eloquence
- ēloquens, ēloquentis** — eloquent
- ēlūdo, ēlūdere, ēlūsī, ēlūsum** — elude
- emancipatio, emancipatiōnis, f.** — emancipation
- emō, emere, ēmī, emptum** — buy, purchase (27)
- ēemptus, -a, -um** — (having been) purchased, bought
- enim** — for, in fact, indeed, truly (postpositive) (7)
- eō, ire, ivī (or ii), itum** — to go (1, 4)
- eō** — to that place, thither, there (28)
- epistula, -ae, f.** — an epistle; a letter (2)
- equus, equī, m.** — horse (3)
- ergō** — therefore (7)
- ēripiō, ēripere, ēripuī, ēreptum** — to take away, rescue; snatch away, steal (21)
- errō [1]** — to wander; err, go astray, be mistaken (7)
- error, erroris, m.** — error (19)
- ērubesco, ērubescere, ērubuī** — redden, blush
- ērudītissimus, -a, -um** — the most educated
- erumpō, -ere, -rūpī, -ruptum** — erupt, break forth
- ēruptio, -iōnis, f.** — an outbreak, eruption
- esca, -ae, f.** — bait
- esse** — to be (see sum) *or* to eat (see edō)
- est** — he/she/it is (2a, 4)
- et** — and (1)
- et ... et** — both ... and (8b)
- etiam** — even, also (10)
- etiam sī** — even if
- eum** — him (object) (2a, 10)
- ēvangelium, -ī, n.** — the gospel

- ēveniō, ēvenīre, ēvēnī, ēventum** — to happen, befall, fall out, come to pass (10)
- eventus, -ūs, m.** — outcome, result
- ex or ē** — (prep. + ablative) out, out of; from (3)
- excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsum** — to rise up, elevate
- excerpō, -ere** — pick out, extract
- excīdō, -cīdere, -īdī, -īsum** — to cut down
- excipiō, excipere, excēpī, exceptum** — to take out, except, take, receive, capture (19)
- excūsō [1]** — to excuse
- exemplum, -ī, n.** — example (20)
- exeō, exīre, exiī, exitum** — to exit, go out (4)
- exerceō, exercēre, exercuī, exercitum** — exercise, use (29)
- exercitātiō, -tiōnis, f.** — exercise
- exercitus, exercitūs, m.** — army (18)
- exhortor, -ārī** — exhort, encourage
- existimō [1]** — think, judge, suppose (16)
- exitium, exitiū, n.** — destruction, death; harm (4)
- expedit** — it is expedient
- expellō, expellere, expulī, pulsum** — to drive out, banish, expel (21)
- explānō [1]** — explain
- explicō [1]** — set forth, explain
- explōrō [1]** — to explore
- exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum** — squeeze out; form, represent; express (26)
- exspectātiō, -tiōnis, f.** — expectation
- exspectō [1]** — to look for, expect, await (17)
- exstinguo, -ere** — to extinguish
- extrā** — (prep. w. accusative) outside
- faber, fabri, m.** — carpenter, forger
- fābula, -ae, f.** — story (2)
- facētia, -arum, f. pl.** — jokes, witticisms
- facile** — (adv.) easily (23)
- facilis, -e** — easy, agreeable (12)
- faciō, facēre, fēcī, factum** — to make, build; do, accomplish (2a)
- factum, factī, n.** — deed, act, accomplishment (2a)
- facultas, -tātis, f.** — capability, power, means (32)
- fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum** — to deceive, mislead, trick (6)
- falsus, -a, -um** — false
- fāma, fāmae, f.** — rumour, report; fame, reputation (2b)
- fames, famis, f.** — hunger, famine
- familia, -ae, f.** — household, family (15)
- familiāritās, -tātis, f.** — familiarity
- famis, -is, f.** — hunger, famine
- fānum, -ī, n.** — shrine, temple
- fātum, -ī, n.** — fate (14)
- fēbris, -is, f.** — fever
- felicitās, -tātis, f.** — luckiness, good luck
- feliciter** — (adv.) happily (23)
- fēlix, gen. fēlicis** — (adj.) lucky, fortunate, happy (22)
- fēmina, -ae, f.** — woman (2a)
- fenestra, -ae, f.** — window (15)
- ferē** — almost (32)
- ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum** — to bear, carry, bring; suffer, endure, tolerate; say, report (15)
- ferōx, gen. ferōcis** — fierce, savage, ferocious (16)
- ferrum, ferrī, n.** — iron; the sword (17)
- ferus, -a, -um** — wild, savage (27)
- ferveō, -ēre** — boil, boil up; seath, rage
- fidēlis, fidēle** — faithful, loyal (15)
- fides, fideī, f.** — faith, trust, trustworthiness, fidelity, promise, guarantee, protection (18)
- filia, -ae, f.** — daughter (note the irregular dative/ablative plural: filiabus) (3)
- filius, -ī, m.** — son (note the irregular vocative singular: fili) (3)
- fīniō, -īre, -īvi, -ītum** — to finish, put an end to (24)
- fīnis, fīnis, m.** — end, limit, boundary, purpose (20)
- fiō, fiērī, factus sum** — become, am made (21)
- firmus, -a, -um** — firm, strong; reliable (28)
- flamma, flammae, f.** — flame (17)
- fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētum** — to weep
- flōrens** — flourishing
- flōs, flōris, m.** — flower (19)
- flūmen, flūminis, n.** — river (13)

- fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxum** — to flow (17)
- foedus, -eris, n.** — treaty; alliance **foedus, -a, -um** — ugly, foul
- fons, fontis, f.** — fountain, spring, source
- fore** — about to be (future infinitive of *esse*) (24)
- forma, -ae, f.** — shape, form; beauty (4)
- forsitan** — (adv.) perhaps (often with the subjunctive) (19)
- fortis, -e** — strong, brave (12)
- fortiter** — (adv.) bravely (23)
- fortitudō, -dinis, f.** — bravery, strength
- fortūna, fortūnae, f.** — fortune, luck (3)
- fortūnātus, -a, -um** — lucky, fortunate, happy (14)
- forum, -ī, n.** — forum (15)
- frāter, frātris, m.** — brother (5)
- fraus, fraudem, f.** — trickery, fraud
- frēnī, -ōrum, m. pl.** — reins
- frēnō [1]** — to bridle, curb, restrain
- fructuōsus** — fruitful, productive
- fructus, fructūs, m.** — fruit; profit (18)
- frūmentum, -ī, n.** — grain, corn (29)
- fruo, fruī, fructus sum** — (+abl) enjoy, derive enjoyment from (20)
- frustrā** — (adv.) in vain; without purpose (29)
- fundus, -ī, m.** — a piece of land, a farm, estate
- fūr, fūris, m.** — thief (29)
- fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum** — to flee; escape; avoid, shun (2a)
- fuī** — see **sum**
- fūmus, -ī, m.** — smoke
- fundamentum, -ī, n.** — foundation, basis
- fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum** — to pour (15)
- furiōsus, -a, -um** — insane, crazy
- furiōsus, -ī, m.** — madman
- futūrus, -a, -um** — future, about to be
- Gallī, -ōrum, m. pl.** — the Gauls
- gallus, -ī, m.** — a rooster
- gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum** — to rejoice (11)
- gaudium, -ī, n.** — joy
- gena, -ae, f.** — the cheek
- gens, gentis, f.** — nation, race (17)
- genū, genūs, n.** — knee (18)
- genus, generis, n.** — kind, type, sort, class, origin (17)
- gerō, gērere, gessī, gestum** — to manage, conduct; carry out, accomplish, perform (6)
- gignō, gignere, genuī, genitum** — to beget, bring forth, produce (17)
- gladius, -ī, m.** — a sword
- glōria, glōriae, f.** — glory, fame, praise (8a)
- gloriōsus, -a, -um** — glorious
- gracilis, -e** — slender, thin (23)
- gradior, gradi, gressus sum** — to take steps, walk, go (20)
- gradus, gradūs, m.** — step
- Graecus, -a, -um** — Greek (6)
- grātia, -ae, f.** — favour; gratitude; partiality (3)
- grātiās agere** — (+ dative) to thank (someone) (3)
- grātus, -a, -um** — welcome; thankful (29)
- gravis, -e** — heavy; serious, important (12)
- gubernātor, -ōris, m.** — steersman, pilot (of a ship); governor
- habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum** — to have, hold, possess (7)
- hasta, hastae, f.** — spear (27)
- haud** — not, not at all (23)
- Hebraeus, -a, -um** — Hebrew
- hēres, hērēdis, m./f.** — heir
- herī** — yesterday (4)
- hīc** — (adv.) in this place, here (16)
- hīc, haec, hōc** (gen. *huius*) — this, these; he, she, it, they (9)
- hilaritās, -tātis, f.** — hilarity, cheerfulness
- hinc** — (adv.) from this place, hence
- historia, -ae, f.** — history
- hodiē** — today (4)
- homō, hominis, m.** — a human being, man; a person (pl. people) (5)
- honestas, -tātis, f.** — honour, honesty
- honestē** — honorably

- honestus, -a, -um** — respected, honoured, honourable (17)
- honor, honōris, m.** — honour, mark of honour; office; privilege (5)
- hōra, -ae, f.** — hour, time (6)
- hortor, hortāri, hortātus sum** — to exhort, encourage, urge (20)
- hostis, -is, m.** — enemy (12)
- hūc** — (adv.) to this place, hither
- hūmānitās, -tātis, f.** — humanity
- hūmānus, -a, -um** — human; humane; refined, civilized (6)
- humilis, -e** — humble, lowly (23)
- humus, -ī, f.** — earth, ground, soil
- ī, īte** — (imperatives of *īre*)
- iaceō, iacēre, iacuī** — to lie (prostrate); lie dead (cf. *iaciō, iacere*) (16)
- iaciō, iacere, iēcī, iactum** — to throw, hurl (14)
- iam** — (adv.) now; already; soon; then, therefore (6)
- ibi** — (adv.) there; then (6)
- ībam, ībās, ībat, ībāmus, ībātis, ībant** — I was going, etc. (imperfect of *īre*)
- ībō, ībis, ībit, ībimus, ībunt** — I shall go, etc. (future of *īre*)
- id** — it (2a, 10)
- īdem, eadem, idem** — the same (11)
- Iēsu** — Jesus (vocative)
- igitur** — therefore (postpositive) (8b)
- ignāvia, -ae, f.** — inactivity, laziness
- ignis, ignis, m.** — fire (17)
- ignōrantia, -ae, f.** — ignorance
- ignis, -is, m.** — fire
- ille, illa, illud** (*gen. illius*) — that, those (of his); he, she, it, they (9)
- illic** — (adv.) in that place, there
- illinc** — (adv.) from that place, thence
- illūc** — (adv.) to that place, thither
- imāgō, imāgīnis, f.** — image, likeness (17)
- imitātiō, -ōnis, f.** — imitation
- immisceō, -ēre** — mingle
- immoderātus, -a, -um** — without measure; unrestrained
- immortālis, -e** — immortal, deathless (21)
- impatientia, -ae, f.** — impatience
- imperātor, -tōris, m.** — commander, general; the Emperor (7)
- imperium, imperiī, n.** — power (to command); an empire (15)
- impetus, impetūs, m.** — an attack (18)
- improbus, -a, -um** — vile, wicked, shameless, impudent (29)
- impūnītus, -a, -um** — unpunished
- imus, -a, -um** — lowest, deepest (23)
- in** — (prep. + abl.) in; on; among (3)
- in** — (prep. + acc.) into; up to; against (3)
- incendō, -ere** — inflame
- incertus, -a, -um** — uncertain, unsure (13)
- incidō, -ere** — fall into
- incipiō, incipere, incēpī, inceptum** — to begin (8b)
- inclinō [1]** — lean toward, incline
- incola, -ae, m./f.** — an inhabitant
- incolumis, -e** — unharmed
- inconstantia, -ae, f.** — fickleness, lack of steadfastness
- incorruptus, -a, -um** — uncorrupted, uninjured, not spoiled
- inde** — (adv.) from there, thence
- indignus, -a, -um** — unworthy of (+ ablative)
- inexpugnābilis, -e** — impregnable
- infinītus** — infinite, unlimited
- infirmus, -a, -um** — weak, feeble; sick, infirm
- inde** — from there (28)
- inductio, -iōnis, f.** — induction
- infirmus, -a, -um** — weak, infirm (28)
- ingenium, -iī, n.** — talent, genius; nature (26)
- ingēns** — huge (12)
- ingrātus, -a, -um** — ungrateful
- inimīcus, -a, -um** — unfriendly, hostile, inimical (11)
- inimīcus, -ī, m.** — an enemy (11)
- inīquitas, -tātis, f.** — iniquity, sinfulness
- iniūria, -ae, f.** — injury, harm (19)

- iniūstitia, -ae, f.** — injustice
- inopia, -ae, f.** — need, indigence, scarcity
- inquit** — he/she says/said (defective) (21)
- insanābilis, -e** — untreatable
- insānia, -ae, f.** — insanity
- inscribō, -ere** — to inscribe, write on
- insequor, insequī, insecūtus sum** — follow, pursue (20)
- insidiae, -ārum, f. pl.** — plots, treachery; an ambush (10)
- insignia** — insignia
- inspicit** — inspect
- instituo, -tuere, -tuī, -tūtum** — found, establish, arrange; begin, start
- insula, insulae, f.** — island (25)
- integritas, -tatis, f.** — integrity
- intellegentia, -ae, f.** — intelligence
- intellegō, intellegere, intelligēxi, intelligētum** — to understand (2b)
- inter** — (prep. + acc.) between, among, amid (4)
- interdum** — (adv.) sometimes, occasionally
- interficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** — to kill (2a)
- interpres, -etis, m.** — an interpreter
- interrogō [1]** — ask
- interveniō, -ire** — to come between
- intrōdūcō, -ere, -dūxī, -ductum** — introduce
- inveniō, invenīre, invēnī, inventum** — to come upon, find (10)
- inventor, -tōris, m.** — inventor
- invictus, -a, -um** — unconquered
- invidia, -ae, f.** — envy, ill-will
- iocus, -i, m.** — a jest, joke
- Iovis** — see Iūppiter
- ipse, ipsa, ipsum** — (intensive pron.) myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, the very, the actual (15)
- ira, irae, f.** — anger; rage; ire (2a)
- iracundia, -ae, f.** — proneness to anger, irascibility
- irritō [1]** — irritate
- is, ea, id (gen. eius)** — he/she/it (2a, 10)
- iste, ista, istud (gen. istius)** — that, those (of yours) (sometimes contemptuously) (9)
- ita** — so; thus
- itaque** — (adv.) and so, therefore (14)
- item** — likewise, also, next
- iter, itineris, n.** — journey, march; route; way, path (24)
- iterum** — (adv.) again (17)
- iubeō, iubēre, iūssī, iūssum** — to order, bid, command (16)
- iucunditās, -tātis, f.** — delight, enjoyment
- iūcundus, -a, -um** — pleasant, delightful (12)
- iūdex, iūdicis, m.** — judge, juror (14)
- iūdicium, iūdicīi, n.** — judgement, decision, opinion, trial (19)
- iūdicō [1]** — to judge, make a judgement
- iungō, iungere, iūnxī, iūnctum** — to join (15)
- Iūppiter, Iovis, m.** — Jupiter
- iūrisprudentia, -ae, f.** — jurisprudence
- iūrō [1]** — to swear, take an oath (21)
- iūs, iūris, n.** — right, justice, law (12)
- iūstitia, -ae, f.** — justice (2b)
- iuvenis, -e** — young, youthful (12)
- iuventus, -tūtis, f.** — youth
- iuvō, iuvāre, iūvī, iūtum** — to help, aid, assist (7)
- labor, labōris, m.** — labour, work, toil (5)
- labōrō [1]** — work, labour, strive; suffer (10)
- lācrima, -ae, f.** — a tear (27)
- laedo, -ere** — to harm
- laetitia, -ae, f.** — joyfulness, gladness, pleasure, delight
- laetus, -a, -um** — happy (27)
- lapis, -idis, f.** — a stone
- lateō, latēre, latuī, -** — to hide, lie hid, be concealed (10)
- lātus, -a, -um,** — broad, wide, extensive (28)
- latus, -eris, n.** — side (28)
- laudābilis, -e** — praiseworthy, laudable
- laudō [1]** — to praise (7)
- laus, laudis, f.** — praise; glory, distinction; a praiseworthy thing (10)

- legō, legēre, lēgī, lēctum** — to read; choose, gather (1)
- leo, leōnis, m./f.** — lion
- lepus, leporis, m.** — a hare
- levis, -e** — light, not heavy; trivial (12)
- lēx, lēgis, f.** — law; statute (5)
- liber, libera, liberum** — free (8a)
- liber, librī, m.** — book (2a)
- liberalis, -e** — befitting a free man, liberal, generous
- libere** — (adv.) freely (23)
- liberī, liberōrum, m.** — children (8a)
- liberō [1]** — to free, liberate (15)
- libertās, libertātis, f.** — liberty, freedom (5)
- libertus, -ī, m.** — freedman, ex-slave
- lingua, -ae, f.** — the tongue; utterance, speech, language (15)
- lis, litem, m.** — lawsuit
- littera, -ae, f.** — a letter (of the alphabet) (13)
- litterae, -ārum, f. pl.** — letter, epistle; document (13)
- lītus, litoris, n.** — shore, coast (19)
- locō [1]** — to put, place
- locus, -ī, m.** — a place; a spot; a topic of discussion; a passage (in a book) (9)
- loca, -ōrum, n. pl.** — places (9)
- locī, -ōrum, m. pl.** — passages in literature (9)
- longē** — (adv.) far (23)
- longus, longa, longum** — long (8a)
- loquacitās, -tātis, f.** — loquacity, talkativeness
- loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** — to say, speak (20)
- lūdus, -ī, m.** — play, sport; a game; school (20)
- lucerna, -ae, f.** — lamp; light
- lūdus, lūdī, m.** — game, sport; school (20)
- lupus, -ī, m.** — wolf (2b)
- lūx, lūcis, f.** — light (19)
- lūxuria, -ae, f.** — luxury, extravagance (13)
- magister, magistrī, m.** — teacher; master; magistrate, officer (4)
- magis ... quam** — more ... than (18)
- magistratus, -us, m.** — a magistrate
- magnanimus, -a, -um** — great-hearted, brave, magnanimous (21)
- magnificentia, -ae, f.** — magnificence
- magnificō [1]** — to magnify
- magnitūdō, -dinis, f.** — magnitude, greatness
- magnopere** — (adv.) greatly; exceedingly, very much (23)
- magnus, -a, -um** — great, large (6)
- māior, māius** — greater, greater (26)
- male** — (adv.) badly (23)
- maleficium, -ī, n.** — misdeed, offense, crime
- malitia, -ae, f.** — malice, spite, ill-will; badness
- mālō, malle, mālūī** — prefer, to want (something) more (25)
- malus, -a, -um** — bad, evil (6)
- maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum** — to remain, stay (7)
- manus, manūs, f.** — hand, handwriting; band (of soldiers) (18)
- mare, maris, n.** — sea (12)
- margarīta, -ae, f.** — pearl
- masculus, -a, -um** — male, masculine
- māter, mātris, f.** — mother (5)
- māternus, -a, -um** — of a mother, maternal
- mātrimōnium, -iī, n.** — marriage, matrimony
- mātūrus, -a, -um** — mature
- Mavors** — Mars (the god of war)
- maximē** — especially
- maximus, -a, -um** — greatest; very great (6)
- mē** — me (1, 10)
- mēcum** — with me (3)
- medicāmentum** — drug, medicine
- medicina, -ae, f.** — medicine
- medicus, medicī, m.** — doctor, physician (9)
- mediōcritas, -tātis, f.** — moderateness, moderation, middle state
- meditātio, meditātiois, f.** — meditation
- medius, -a, -um** — middle (of); middle (23)
- mel, mellis, n.** — honey
- melius** — (adv.) rather
- melior, melius** — better (26)



- membrum, -ī, n.** — member
- memini, meminisse** (*defective*) — to remember (16)
- memor** (*gen. memoris*) — mindful (19)
- memoria, memoriae, f.** — memory, recollection (13)
- mendacium, -iī, n.** — lie, falsehood
- mendax, mendācis** — (adj.) lying
- mēns, mēntis, f.** — mind, thought, intention (12)
- mensis, -is, m.** — month
- mensūra, -ae, f.** — a measure, measuring
- mentior, mentīri, mentītus sum** — to lie, deceive (28)
- meritō** — (adv.) deservedly, justly
- metuō, metuere, metuī, metūtum** — to fear (35)
- metus, metūs, m.** — fear, dread, anxiety (18)
- meus, -a, -um** — my (6)
- mihi** — to/for me (dative) (4, 10)
- mīles, mīlitis, m.** — soldier; the soldiery (10)
- mīlia, mīlium, n. pl.** — thousands (22)
- mille** — thousand (22)
- minimus, -a, -um** — smallest; very small (6)
- minimē** — least (23)
- minister, -trī, m.** — attendant, helper
- ministrō [1]** — to help
- minor, minus** — less, smaller (26)
- minus ... quam** — less ... than (18)
- mīror, -ārī, mīrātus sum** — be astonished or amazed at (20)
- miscēō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtum** — to mix, stir up, disturb (19)
- miser, misera, miserum** — wretched, miserable, unfortunate (15)
- miseria, -ae, f.** — misery (14)
- misericordia, -ae, f.** — tenderheartedness, pity, sympathy
- mitissimus, -a, -um** — mildest, most gentle
- mittō, mittēre, mīsī, missum** — send (2)
- mixtura, -ae, f.** — a mixture
- moderatio, -tiōnis, f.** — moderation
- molestus, -a, -um** — troublesome, irksome
- modus, -ī, m.** — manner, mode, way; measure; limit (13)
- quō modō** — in what manner, how? (13)
- nōn modō ... sed etiam** — not only ... but also (13)
- mollis, -e** — soft, tender (26)
- moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum** — to advise, warn (7)
- mons, montis, m.** — mountain (18)
- mora, -ae, f.** — delay (4)
- mōrālis, -e** — moral
- morbus, -ī, m.** — sickness, disease (9)
- mōrēs, mōrum, m. pl.** — habits, morals; character (5)
- morior, morī, mortuus sum** — to die (20)
- moror, -ārī, -ātus sum** — delay
- mors, mortis, f.** — death (12)
- morsus, -ūs, m.** — bite
- mortālis, -e** — mortal (21)
- mortālitās, -tātis, f.** — mortality
- mortuus, -a, -um** — dead, lifeless (6)
- mōs, mōris, m.** — custom, manner; practice; nature, mode (5)
- mōrēs, mōrum, m. pl.** — habits, morals; character (5)
- moveō, movēre, movī, mōtum** — to move (13)
- mox** — (adv.) soon (27)
- Moysēs** — Moses
- muliebris, -e** — (adj.) female, womanly
- mulier, mulieris, f.** — woman, a female (27)
- multum** — (adv.) much, very much, greatly (15)
- multus, -a, -um** — much (singular); many (plural) (6)
- mundus, -ī, m.** — the world (11)
- mūnimentum, -ī, n.** — fortress
- murus, -ī, m.** — a wall
- mūtātiō, -tiōnis, f.** — change
- mūtō [1]** — to change, alter; exchange (13)
- mūtus, -a, -um** — mute, speechless
- ne** — (added to the first word of a sentence to make a question) (1)

- nam** — for (10)  
**namque** — for in fact, for indeed  
**nārrō** [1] — tell, narrate (16)  
**nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum** — to be born; spring forth, arise (20)  
**nāsus, -ī, m.** — nose  
**nātūra, -ae, f.** — nature (2b)  
**nātūrālis, -e** — natural (14)  
**nauta, nautae, m.** — sailor (2a)  
**nāvigō** [1] — to sail, navigate (17)  
**nāvis, nāvis, f.** — ship (15)  
**-ne** — (added to the first word of a sentence to make a question) (1)  
**nē** — not (19)  
**nē ... quidem** — not even (negates with emphasis the word falling between **nē** and **quidem**) (19)  
**nec** — and not (8a)  
**nec ... nec** — neither ... nor (8b)  
**necessārius, -a, -um** — necessary  
**nesse** — (indecl.) necessary (29)  
**necessitās, -tātis, f.** — necessity  
**necō** [1] — to kill, slay (9)  
**neglegō, neglegere, neglēxī, neglēctum** — to neglect, disregard (17)  
**negō** [1] — to deny (16)  
**negotium, -iī, n.** — business  
**nēmō, nūllius, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō/nūllā, m./f.** — no one, nobody (10)  
**neque** — and not (8a)  
**neque ... neque** — neither ... nor (8b)  
**nesciō, nescire, nescivī, nescitum** — not to know, be ignorant of (16)  
**nesse est** — it is necessary (+ infinitive) (1)  
**neuter, -tra, -trum** (*gen.* neutrius) — neither (of two) (9)  
**nex, necis, f.** — death; murder  
**niger, nigra, nigrum** — black  
**nihil** — nothing (1)  
**nil** — nothing  
**nimis or nimium** — (adv.) too, too much (22)  
**nimium, -iī n.** — too much, excess, superabundance (22)  
**nisi** — if not; except, unless (4)  
**niveus, -a, -um** — snowy, white  
**nōbilis, -e** — noble (15)  
**nōbiscum** — with us (3)  
**noceō, nocēre, nocuī, nocitūrus** — (+ dative) harm (30)  
**noctua, -ae, f.** — an owl  
**nōlī, nōlite** — don't... (1)  
**nōlō, nolle, nōluī** — to not... wish, be unwilling (25)  
**nōmen, nōminis, n.** — name; noun (5)  
**nōn** — not (1)  
**nōn modō ... sed etiam** — not only ... but also (13)  
**nōn solum ... sed etiam** — not only, but also (11)  
**nōndum** — not yet (14)  
**nōnne** — (introduces a question expecting an affirmative answer) is it not the case that...? (13)  
**nōnnūllus, -a, -um** (*gen.* nōnnūllius) — some (lit. not none) (9)  
**nōs, nostrum/nostri, nōbīs, nōs, nōbīs** — we, us (pl.) (1, 10)  
**noscō, noscere, nōvī, nōtum** — know, recognize, understand (16)  
**nōsmet** — (emphatic form of *nōs*)  
**noster, nostra, nostrum** — our, ours (6)  
**novem** — nine (22)  
**novitās -tātis, f.** — novelty  
**novus, -a, -um** — new (8a)  
**nox, noctis, f.** — night (17)  
**nubes, nubis, f.** — cloud  
**nūdus, -a, -um** — nude, naked  
**nūgās** — nonsense  
**nūllus, -a, -um** (*gen.* nūllius) — no, not any; none (9)  
**num** — (introduces a question expecting a negative answer) It's not the case that ..., is it? (13)  
**nūmen, -inis, n.** — the divine will  
**numerus, -i. m.** — number (2b)  
**numquam** — (adv.) never (3)

- nunc** — now (4)
- nūntiō** [1] — to proclaim, announce, declaim (16)
- nuntius, -iī, m.** — a messenger
- nūper** — (adv.) recently (11)
- nuptiae, -ārum, f. pl.** — a marriage; wedding, nuptials
- obeō, -īre, -ivī, -itum** — meet, go towards (24)
- obliviscor, -iscī, -itus sum** — forget (+ genitive) (24)
- obscurus, -a, -um** — obscure
- obsideō -ēre** — besiege
- occidō, occidere, occidī, occisum** — strike down, kill, slay (24)
- octō** — eight (22)
- oculus, -ī, m.** — eye (2a)
- ōdī, ōdisse, ōsum** (defective) — hate (16)
- odium, -iī, n.** — hatred (28)
- offa, -ae, f.** — a morsel (of food), a bite
- officium, officii, n.** — duty; a kindness, a favour (4)
- offula, -ae, f.** — a little treat
- ōlim** — (adv.) at that time, once, formerly (15)
- omnīno** — entirely, completely (23)
- omnis, omne** — every, all (12)
- onerātus, -a, -um** — burdened
- onus, oneris, n.** — burden, load
- operatio, operatiōnis, f.** — activity, operation
- opīnio, -ōnis, f.** — opinion
- opprimō, opprimere, oppressī, oppressum** — to suppress, overwhelm, overpower, check (25)
- oppugnō** [1] — attack (19)
- optimus, -a, -um** — best; very good (6)
- opus, operis, n.** — work, task; deed, accomplishment (29)
- opus est** — there is need of (+ ablative of thing + dative of person) (29)
- ōrātor, -ōris, m.** — orator, speaker (13)
- Orcus** — Hades
- ordo, ordinis, n.** — rank, station; order
- orior, orirī, ortus sum** — to arise, rise (20)
- ornātus, -ūs, m.** — splendid dress, attire, apparel
- ōrō** [1] — pray, beg, beseech (29)
- ōs, ōris, n.** — mouth; face (12)
- ostendō, ostendere, ostendī, ostentum** — to show, exhibit, display (16)
- ōtium, ōtīi, n.** — leisure; peace (and quiet) (4)
- ovis, ovis, m./f.** — sheep
- palam** — (adv.) openly, publicly
- panis, panis, m.** — bread
- pār, paris** — (adj.) equal (27)
- parens, parentis, m./f.** — parent (15)
- pariter** — (adv.) equally (27)
- parō** [1] — prepare, provide; get, obtain (15)
- pars, partis, f.** — part, share; direction; side (12)
- parsimonia, -ae, f.** — frugality
- partim** — (adv.) partly
- parum** — (adv.) little, too little (21)
- parvus, -a, -um** — small (6)
- patefaciō, patefacere, patefēci, patefactum** — to make open, open; disclose, expose (16)
- pater, patris, m.** — father (5)
- patientia, -ae, f.** — patience (14)
- patior, patī, passus sum** — to suffer, endure; permit (20)
- patria, -ae, f.** — homeland; fatherland (3)
- patrimōnium, -iī, n.** — an inheritance
- paulatim** — (adv.) little by little
- paulum** — (adv.) a little
- paulus, -a, -um** — little, small
- paucī, -ae, -a** — few (plural only) (6)
- pauper, (gen.) -eris** — poor
- paupertās, -ātis, f.** — poverty (13)
- pāx, pācis, f.** — peace (5)
- peccātum, -ī, n.** — sin
- pecūnia, -ae, f.** — money (3)
- pecus, pecudis, m.** — cattle
- ped-** — (see **pēs**)
- pēior, pēius** — worse (26)
- pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum** — to push, drive out, banish (21)
- pendeo, -ēre** — to depend
- per** — (prep. + acc.) through (4)

- perdō, perdere, perdidī, perditum** — to waste, destroy, lose (29)
- pereō, perīre, perivī** (or *periī*), **peritum** — to pass away, die, perish; disappear (4)
- perficiō, -ere, -fēcī, -fectum** — to perfect, make perfect
- perfugium, perfugiū, n.** — refuge, shelter (27)
- perīculum, perīculī, n.** — danger, risk (2a)
- permovēō, -ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum** — to stir up, move; influence
- perpetuus, -a, -um** — perpetual, lasting, continuous (8a)
- persequor, persequī, persecūtus sum** — pursue, chase (20)
- pertineō, -ēre, -tenuī, -tentum** — to relate to, pertain to, concern (21)
- pervenio, -ire, -vēni, -ventum** — to arrive at, reach
- pēs, pedis, m.** — foot (15)
- pessimus, -a, -um** — worst; very bad (6)
- petō, petere, petivī, petitum** — to seek, ask (21)
- petra, -ae, f.** — stone
- philosophia, philosophiae, f.** — philosophy (8a)
- philosophus, -ī, m.** — a philosopher (11)
- pietas, -tātis, f.** — piety, dutifulness, loyalty (27)
- pīrāta, -ae, m.** — a pirate
- piscis, -is, m.** — a fish
- plēnus, -a, -um** — full (8a) of/with(+ gen. or abl.)
- plurimus, -a, -um** — most (23)
- plūrēs, plūra** — (pl.) more (26)
- plus, pluris, n.** — more (w. partitive genitive) (26)
- plus ... quam** — more ... than (18)
- poena, poenae, f.** — penalty, punishment (11)
- poenam dare** — to pay the penalty, be punished (11)
- poēta, poētae, m.** — poet (2a)
- pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum** — put, place, set (21)
- populus, populī, m.** — a people, a nation (2a)
- porcīnus, -a, -um** — of a pig, porcine
- porta, -ae, f.** — gate; entrance (3)
- portō [1]** — carry (14)
- portus, portūs, m.** — harbour, port (18)
- possessor, -ōris, m.** — possessor
- possibilis, -e** — possible
- possum, posse, potuī** — to be able; can (4)
- post** — (prep. + acc.) after, behind (9)
- postea** — (adv.) afterwards (21)
- postquam** — after (22)
- potens** — able, powerful, mighty, strong (12)
- potestas, -tātis, f.** — power, authority, ability (11)
- praecepta** — precepts
- praeclārus, -a, -um** — famous
- praemium, -iī, n.** — a reward, a prize (17)
- praeparo [1]** — prepare, provide, get, obtain
- praeter** — (prep. + acc.) besides, except for; apart from; beyond, past (10)
- praetor, praetōris, m.** — the praetor, the governor
- prandeō, -ēre** — eat breakfast
- prāvus, -a, -um** — deformed; perverse, improper; bad
- premō, premere, pressī, pressum** — to press, press hard, pursue (26)
- pretium, -iī, n.** — worth, value, price
- prex, precis, f.** — prayer, request, entreaty
- primō** — (adv.) at first, at the beginning (23)
- primus, -a, -um** — first; foremost (6)
- principium, principii, n.** — beginning (11)
- prior, prius** — earlier, previous (26)
- pristinus, -a, -um** — former, original; pristine
- privātio, -tiōnis, f.** — a taking away; removal
- privātīm** — privately
- privātus, -a, -um** — private (13)
- privō [1]** — to deprive (+ abl. of separation) (18)
- prō** — (prep. + abl.) in front of, before; on behalf of, for the sake of, in return for, instead of (10)
- probitas, probitātis, f.** — honesty, uprightness (20)
- probō [1]** — to test, examine, judge (16)
- probus, -a, -um** — upright, honest, honorable, virtuous (29)
- prōcreō [1]** — to procreate
- proelium, -iī, n.** — battle (28)
- profectō** — (adv.) indeed, surely, certainly

- proficīscor, proficīsi, profectus sum** — to set out, start (20)
- prōfundo, -ere, -fūdī, -fūsum** — to pour forth
- profundum, ī, n.** — depth
- prōgredior, prōgredi, prōgressus sum** — to step forth, go forth (20)
- prohibeō, prohibēre, prohibuī, prohibitum** — to keep back, prevent, hinder, restrain, prohibit (21)
- prohibitus, -a, -um** — prohibited
- prōmissum, -ī, n.** — a promise
- prōmittō, -ere, -mīsi, -missum** — to promise
- prōnūntiō [1]** — to proclaim, announce, declaim (16)
- properō [1]** — hurry, hasten, quicken, accelerate (28)
- prōprius, -a, -um** — peculiar, special, characteristic
- propter** — (prep. + acc.) on account of; because of (3)
- prosperus, -a, -um** — prosperous
- prōtinus** — (adv.) immediately (23)
- prōvideō, -ēre, -vīdī, -vīsum** — to foresee, discern; provide
- proximus, -a, -um** — very near, next (to), nearest (8a)
- pūblicus, -a, -um** — public; belonging to the people (13)
- pudor, pudōris, f.** — shame (28)
- puella, puellae, f.** — girl (2a)
- puer, puerī, m.** — boy (2a)
- puerilia, -ōrum, n. pl.** — puerile things; childish things
- pugnō [1]** — fight (19)
- pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum** — beautiful, handsome (8a)
- pulchre** — (adv.) beautifully (23)
- pūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum** — to punish
- pūrus, -a, -um** — pure, clean
- puteus, -eī, m.** — a pit
- putō [1]** — to think, suppose, judge, reckon (16)
- Pŷthagoras** — Pythagoras (a famous Greek mathematician/philosopher)
- quā** — by which way, how (28)
- quaerō, quaerere, quaesivī, quaesitum** — seek, look for; ask (24)
- quālis, -e** — of what sort, what kind
- quam** — (adv.) how (as an exclamation when used before an adjective, 13); as (e.g.) beautiful as (as an intensifier before a superlative, 23); than (with comparative or malle) 26; which (as a relative pronoun, 18)
- magis ... quam** — more ... than
- minus ... quam** — less ... than
- plus ... quam** — more ... than
- quamdiu** — for as long as
- quamquam** — (conj.) although (11)
- quandō** — when; when...? (4)
- quantus, -a, -um** — how great, how much
- quārē** — because of which; wherefore; why (9)
- quārtus, -a, -um** — fourth (22)
- quasi** — as if, just as, as it were
- quattuor** — four (22)
- que** — and (enclitic particle added to a word to attach it to what went before) (5)
- quī** — (he) who
- quī, quae, quod** — (interrog. adj.) which...? (13)
- quī, quae, quod** — (rel.pron) who, which, what, that (17)
- quia** — (conj.) because (11)
- quid?** — what? why? (1, 13)
- quīdam, quaedam, quiddam** — (*indefinite pronoun*) a certain one/thing, someone, something (25)
- quīdam, quaedam, quoddam** — (*indefinite adjective*) a certain, some (25)
- quidem** — indeed, certainly, in fact (23)
- nē ... quidem** — not even (19)
- quidquid** — whatever (18)
- quīnque** — five (22)
- quīntus, -a, -um** — fifth (22)
- quis, quid** — (interrog. pron.) who...?, which...? (13)
- quisquam, quaequam, quidquam** — anyone, anything
- quisque, quaeque, quidque** — (indefin. pron.) each, every (one/person/thing) (14)

- quisquis, quidquid** — whoever, whatever (18)  
**quō** — where? to where? (1, 28)  
**quōcumque** — wherever  
**quod** — (conj.) because (11)  
**quod** — that which  
**quōmodō** — in what manner, how? (13)  
**quondam** — (adv.) formerly, once (23)  
**quoniam** — (conj.) since, inasmuch as, because (9)  
**quoque** — also (4)  
**quōquō** — wherever  
**quot**, interrog. adj. — how many (13, 28)  
**quotiēns** — how often, how many times (28)  
**radius, -iī, m.** — a ray, a beam; a wheel-spoke  
**rādix, rādīcis, f.** — root  
**ramus, ramī, m.** — branch  
**rapiō, rapere, rapuī, raptum** — to seize, snatch, carry away (21)  
**rārus, -a, -um** — rare  
**ratio, ratiōnis, f.** — method, plan; reason; system; calculation, account (9)  
**recte** — correctly, rightly  
**recipiō, recipere, recēpī, receptum** — to take back, regain, receive (19)  
**recitō [1]** — to read aloud, recite (17)  
**reconciliatio, -tiōnis, f.** — reconciliation  
**rectus, -a, -um** — straight; upright, virtuous (17)  
**reddō, reddere** — to give back, return  
**redeō, redire, redīvī** (or rediī), **reditum** — to go back, go again; return, revert (4)  
**reditus, -ūs, m.** — return  
**reficiō, -ere, -fēci, -fectum** — restore  
**rēgīna, -ae, f.** — queen (4)  
**regnum, regnī, n.** — kingdom; (kingly) rule; kingship (17)  
**regō, -ere, rēxī, rectum** — rule, direct [1]  
**relinquō, -linquere, -liqūī, -lictum** — to leave behind, abandon (15)  
**reliquus, -a, -um** — remaining, what is left (26)  
**remaneō, remanēre, remānsī, remānsūm** — to remain, stay behind (7)  
**remedium, remedī, n.** — remedy, cure (9)  
**remittō, -ere, -mīsī, -missum** — to send back  
**removēō, removēre, remōvī, remōtum** — to remove  
**repente** — (adv.) suddenly (23)  
**repentinus, -a, -um** — sudden  
**repetitio, -iōnis, f.** — repetition  
**reprehensiō, -ōnis, f.** — blame, censure  
**repugnō [1]** — fight back  
**requies, requiētis, f.** — rest  
**rēs, rēi, f.** — thing, matter, business affair (18)  
**rēs publica, rēi publicae, f.** — state, commonwealth, republic (18)  
**rēspōndeō, rēspōndēre, rēspōndī, rēspōnsūm** — to respond, answer (16)  
**retineō, retinēre, retinūī, retentum** — to retain, keep  
**rētrō** — (adv.) back, backwards, formerly  
**rēx, rēgis, m.** — king (5)  
**rīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, risum** — to laugh, laugh at, mock (28)  
**rīpa, -ae, f.** — the bank (of a stream)  
**rogō [1]** — to ask  
**Rōma, -ae, f.** — Rome (3)  
**Rōmam** — (with a verb of motion) (to) Rome (1)  
**Rōmānus, -a, -um** — Roman (6)  
**rosa, -ae, f.** — a rose (3)  
**rubor, -ōris, m.** — shame  
**rusticus, -a, -um** — rustic  
**sacer, sacra, sacrum** — sacred, holy  
**sacerdos, sacerdotis, m.** — priest  
**sacratissimus, -a, -um** — most sacred  
**saepe** — often (6)  
**saeculum, -ī, n.** — an age  
**saevio, -ire** — to rage; be violent  
**salūs, salūtis, f.** — safety, health (16)  
**salūtō [1]** — greet, salute  
**salveō, salvēre** — to be well, be in good health (7)  
**salve, salvēte** — (imperative) hello!  
**salvus, -a, -um** — safe, sound (8a)  
**sanctificō [1]** — make holy  
**sanctum, -ī, n.** — a sacred thing

- sānitas, -tātis, f.** — health  
**sānō [1]** — to heal, cure  
**sānus, -a, -um** — sound, healthy, sane (8a)  
**sapiens, sapientis** — wise (14)  
**sapienter** — (adv.) wisely (23)  
**sapientia, sapientiae, f.** — wisdom; discernment (2a)  
**sapiō, sapere, sapīvi** — to be wise; **sapiō, sapere, sapīvi** — to be wise; understand (29)  
**sarmentum, -i, n.** — branch  
**satiō [1]** — to satisfy (7)  
**satis, n.** (indeclinable) — enough (22)  
**Sāturnālia, -ium, n. pl.** — the Saturnalian festival  
**saxum, -i, n.** — rock, boulder (26)  
**scelus, sceleris, n.** — crime, evil deed, wickedness (19)  
**scientia, scientiae, f.** — knowledge (19)  
**scrībō, scrībēre, scrīpsī, scrīptum** — to write (1)  
**scīlicet** — (adv.) of course, naturally, certainly  
**sciō, scīre, scīvi, scītum** — to know (16)  
**scrībō, scrībēre, scrīpsī, scrīptum** — to write (1)  
**scrīptor, scrīptōris, m.** — a writer (5)  
**sē** — himself/herself/itself/themselves (accusative or ablative) (14)  
**sēcrētē** — (adv.) in secret; secretly  
**sēcum** — with himself/herself/itself/themselves (15)  
**secundus, -a, -um** — second; following; favorable, pleasant (22)  
**sed** — but (1)  
**sedeō, sedēre, sēdi, sessum** — to sit (24)  
**sēdes, sēdis, m.** — a seat, a chair (24)  
**sēditio, -tiōnis, f.** — civil discord, dissension, sedition  
**sedeō, -ēre, sēdi, sessum** — sit  
**semel** — once  
**sēmen, sēminis, n.** — seed  
**sēminarium, -i, n.** — seed-bed  
**sēminō [1]** — to sow, plant, propagate  
**semper** — (adv.) always (1)  
**sempiternus, -a, -um** — eternal  
**senātus, senātūs, m.** — senate (18)  
**senectūs, senectūtis, f.** — old age (10)  
**senex** (gen. *senis*) — old, aged (12)  
**senex, senis, m./f.** — old man/woman (12)  
**sensus, sensūs, m.** — feeling, sense (18)  
**sententia, -ae, f.** — opinion, judgement; a sentence (2a)  
**sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sensum** — to feel, perceive, think (11)  
**separatim** — separately  
**septem** — seven (22)  
**septimus, -a, -um** — seventh (22)  
**sepulcrum, -i, n.** — burial place, grave (24)  
**sepultūra, -ae, f.** — burial, interment, funerals  
**sequor, sequī, secūtus sum** — to follow (20)  
**sermō, sermōnis, m.** — talk, conversation, speech, discourse (27)  
**sērus, -a, -um** — late (in coming)  
**servitium, -iī, n.** — servitude  
**servitūs, servitūtis, f.** — servitude, slavery (16)  
**servō [1]** — to preserve, keep safe (7)  
**servus, -i, m.** — slave, servant (4)  
**sevērus, -a, -um** — strict, stern, severe  
**sex** — six (22)  
**sī** — if (4)  
**sibi** — to/for himself/herself/itself/themselves (dative) (14)  
**sīc** — thus, so; in this way (23)  
**sīcut** — just like, just as  
**sīdus, sīderis, n.** — star (20)  
**signum, signī, n.** — sign, signal (2b)  
**sileō, -ēre** — be silent  
**silentium, -i, n.** — silence  
**similis, -e** — similar to, like, resembling (12)  
**similitūdo, -tūdinis, f.** — similarity  
**simplex, -icis** — simple  
**simul** — (adv.) at the same time (23)  
**simul ac or simul atque** — at the same time as (23)  
**simulācrum, -i, n.** — image, statue  
**sine** — (prep. + abl.) without (3)  
**sinister, sinistra, sinistrum** — left, left-handed, harmful, ill-omened (18)

- sinō, sinere, sīvī, situm** — allow (19)
- sitiō, sitīre, sitīvī** — to thirst, be thirsty
- sitis, sitis, f.** — thirst
- societās, -ātis, f.** — association, community, society
- sōl, sōlis, m.** — the sun (21)
- sōlācium, sōlāciī, n.** — comfort, relief (20)
- soleō, solēre, solitus sum** — to be accustomed (8b)
- solum** — (adv.) only, merely
- sōlus, -a, -um** (*gen. sōlius*) — alone, only; the only (9)
- nōn solum ... sed etiam** — not only ... but also (9)
- somnus, -ī, m.** — sleep (22)
- soror, sorōris, f.** — sister (5)
- spatium, -ī, n.** — space, room
- speculum, -ī, n.** — mirror
- spernō, spernere, sprēvī, sprētum** — to spurn, reject; *despise, scorn*
- spērō [1]** — to hope (24)
- spēs, spēī, f.** — hope (18)
- spīritus, spīritūs, m.** — breath; spirit, soul (18)
- splendidus, -a, -um** — brilliant, illustrious, distinguished
- splendor, -ōris, m.** — brilliance, brightness
- spolium, -iī, n.** — plunder; spoils
- spondeō, -ēre, sponodi, sponsum** — pledge oneself
- statim** — immediately
- stella, -ae, f.** — star (34)
- stīlus, stīlī, m.** — pen (2)
- stō, stāre, steti, statum** — to stand, stand still (11)
- strātum, -ī, n.** — saddle
- studium, -iī, n.** — zeal, eagerness; endeavor; study (10)
- stultitia, -ae, f.** — foolishness (2b)
- stultus, -a, -um** — foolish (6)
- stultus, -ī, m.** — a fool
- sub** — (prep. + abl.) under (used when something is at rest) (10)
- sub** — (prep. + acc.) under (used when something is moving under) (10)
- subitō** — (adv.) suddenly
- subitus, -a, -um** — sudden, unexpected (26)
- subrīdeō, -ēre, -risī, -risum** — smile (28)
- , suī, sibi, sē, sē, reflex. pron.** — himself, herself, itself, themselves (14)
- sum, esse, fui, futurum** — to be; exist (4)
- summa, -ae, f.** — the chief point, the main thing
- summus, -a, -um** — highest (part of); highest (23)
- sūmō, -ere, sumpsī, sumptum** — to take, take up, assume (16)
- sunt** — they are (2a, 4)
- superbia, -ae, f** — arrogance
- superbus -a -um** — arrogant (24)
- superior, superius** — higher (26)
- superō [1]** — to overcome, conquer; be superior to (7)
- supersum, -esse** — to remain, exist still
- surdus, -a, -um** — deaf
- suscipio, -ere, -cēpī, -ceptum** — undertake (29)
- suspendō, -ere** — to hang, suspend
- suus, -a, -um, reflex. poss.** — his own, her own, its own, their own (15)
- taceō, tacēre, tacuī, tacitum** — to be silent, be quiet (15)
- tālis, -e** — such, such a kind (28)
- tam** — (adv.) so, such
- tam ... quam** — such ... as, as ... as (28)
- tamen** — (postpositive adv.) nevertheless, still (9)
- tamquam** — as if
- tandem** — at length, at last, in the end, finally
- tangō, tangēre, tetigī, tactum** — to touch (2)
- tantum** — only; so much, as much
- tantus, -a, -um** — so great, as great (28)
- tardus, -a, -um** — slow, sluggish (26)
- taurus, taurī, m.** — bull (17)
- tē** — you (sg. acc. or abl.) (1, 10)
- tēcum** — with you (3)
- telum, -ī, n.** — spear; weapon
- temeritās, -tātis, f.** — recklessness
- temperantia, -ae, f.** — moderation, self-control, temperance



- tempestās, tempestātis, f.** — storm, weather; period of time, season (13)
- templum, -ī, n.** — temple, shrine (3)
- temptō [1]** — to attempt, try (8b)
- tempus, temporis, n.** — time, occasion, opportunity (5)
- tenēbrae, -ārum, f. pl.** — darkness
- teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum** — to hold, keep, possess, restrain (11)
- tentātiō, -tionis, f.** — temptation
- tener -a, -um** — soft, delicate, tender
- tergum, -ī, n.** — back
- terra, -ae, f.** — earth, soil; land; country region (3)
- terreō, terrēre, terruī, territum** — to terrify, frighten (7)
- territōrium, -ī, n.** — territory
- tertius, -a, -um** — third (22)
- testis, -is, m.** — a witness
- tibi** — to/for you (dative) (4, 10)
- timeō, timēre, timuī, -** — to fear, be afraid of (10)
- timidē** — timidly (adv.)
- timidus, -a, -um** — fearful, timid
- timor, timōris, m.** — fear (5)
- tolerō [1]** — to endure, bear, tolerate (9)
- tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātum** — to raise, lift up; take away; remove, destroy (21)
- torqueō, -ēre** — to torture
- tot** — so many, as many (28)
- totiēns** — so often, as often (28)
- tōtus, -a, -um** (*gen. tōtius*) — whole, entire (9)
- trādō, -ere, trādidī, trāditum** — to hand over, surrender; deliver, transmit; report (3)
- trahō, -ere, trāxī, tractum** — to drag, draw; get, obtain, derive; attract (9)
- trāns** — (prep. + acc.) across (4)
- transeō, transire** — to cross over, go across
- trēs, tria** — three (22)
- triumphum, -ī, n.** — triumph
- tū, tuī, tibi, tē, tē** — you (sg.) (10)
- tueor, tuērī, tutus sum** — look to; care for, protect (20)
- tum** — then, at that time (5, 28)
- tunc** — then (tum + -ce)
- tūne** — tū + -ne
- turba, -ae, f.** — uproar, disturbance, mob, crowd, multitude (12)
- turpis, -e** — ugly, foul (23)
- tūtō** — (adv.) safely
- tūtus, -a, -um** — safe (16)
- tuus, -a, -um** — your (6)
- Tycha** — Tyche (the Greek name for the Roman goddess Fortuna)
- tyrannus, -ī, m.** — tyrant (3)
- ubi** — where; when (4)
- ubicumque** — wherever
- ullus, -a, -um** (*gen. ullius*) — any (9)
- ultimus, -a, -um** — final, last (6)
- ultrā** — (prep. + acc.) on the other side of, beyond (20)
- umbra, umbrae, f.** — a shadow (17)
- umquam** — ever (15)
- unde** — from where...? whence (10)
- undecim** — eleven (22)
- ūnicus, -a, -um** — one and only, sole
- ūnitās, -tātis, f.** — unity
- ūnus, -a, -um** (*gen. ūnūs*) — one, single, alone (9, 22)
- urbs, urbis, f.** — city (12)
- usque** — all the way to
- ūsus, usūs, m.** — use (18)
- ut** (w. indicative) — just as; as, as if (23)
- ut** (w. subjunctive) — that (result); so that (purpose), in order that (purpose) (35)
- uter, -tra, -trum** (*gen. utrīus*) — either (of two), which (of two)...? (9)
- uterque, utraque, utrumque** — either, each one
- uterus, -ī, m.** — womb
- ūtilis, -e** — useful (19)
- ūtilitas -tātis, f.** — utility, usefulness
- utinam** — oh that... (introduces a wish) (19)
- ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum** — (+ abl.) to use; enjoy, experience (20)

- utrum ... an** — whether ... or (19)
- uxor, uxōris, f.** — wife (5)
- vacuus, -a, -um** — empty (14)
- vādō, -ere** — go (≈eō, ire)
- vagus, -a, -um** — rambling, roaming; unfixed, unsettled (24)
- valeō, valēre, valuī, valitum** — be strong; flourish; be well (7)
- vanus, -a, -um** — empty, void; vain, meaningless (29)
- vehementer** — eagerly, ardently, vehemently
- vel** — or (28)
- vel ... vel** — either ... or (28)
- velut** — (adv.) like, just as
- vēlōcitas, -ātis, f.** — velocity
- vendō, -ere, vendidī, venditum** — sell (27)
- venēnum, -ī, n.** — poison (14)
- venerābilis, -e** — venerable
- veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum** — to come (2a)
- verbum, verbī, n.** — a word (2)
- vereor, verēri, veritus sum** — to fear (20)
- vērītās, -tātis, f.** — truth, reality (5)
- vērō** — (adv.) in truth, in fact, certainly, truly, to be sure, surely, assuredly (23)
- versus, versūs, m.** — line of verse (18)
- vertō, vertere, vertī, versum** — to turn (24)
- vērūs, -a, -um** — true, real (6)
- vespillo -ōnis, m.** — corpse-bearer
- vester, vestra, vestrum** — your, yours (pl.) (6)
- vestimenta, -ōrum, n.** — clothes, clothing
- vestis, vestis, f.** — clothing
- vetō [1]** — forbid, prevent, hinder
- vetus, veteris** — (adj.) old (29)
- vetus, veteris** — (adj.) old (25)
- via, -ae, f.** — road, street, way (6)
- vīcīna, vīcīnae, f.** — neighbour (15)
- vīcīnus, vīcīnī, m.** — neighbour (15)
- victor, victōris, m.** — victor, conqueror (25)
- victoria, -ae, f.** — victory (3)
- victus, -a, -um** — the conquered
- videlicet** — clearly, surely
- videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsum** — to see, look at (7)
- videor, vidēri, vīsus sum** — to seem, be seen (21)
- vigilō [1]** — be watchful, vigilant, keep watch (29)
- vīgintī** — twenty (22)
- vīncō, vīncēre, vīcī, victum** — to conquer, defeat (1)
- vīnculum, -ī, n.** — bond, binding, cord
- vīnum, vīnī, n.** — wine (2a)
- vir, virī, m.** — man (2a)
- vīrēs, vīrium, f. pl.** — strength (12)
- virgō, virginis, f.** — maiden, virgin (5)
- virtuōsus, -a, -um** — virtuous
- virtūs, virtūtis, f.** — manliness, excellence, virtue (5)
- vīs, vīs, f.** — force, power, violence (12)
- vīrēs, vīrium, f. pl.** — strength (12)
- vīta, vītae, f.** — life; way of life (2a)
- vītis, -is, f.** — vine
- vītium, vītī, n.** — fault; crime, vice (8a)
- vītō [1]** — to avoid, shun (7)
- vīvō, vīvēre, vīxī, vīctum** — to live, be alive (1)
- vīvus, -a, -um** — living; alive; lively (6)
- vix** — barely, scarcely (23)
- vōbiscum** — with you (pl.) (3)
- vocātio, -tiōnis, f.** — vocation, calling
- vocō, vocāre, vocāvī, vocātum** — to call, summon, invite (7)
- volō, velle, voluī** — to wish, want, be willing, will (14)
- volūbilis, -tatis, f.** — fluency, volubility
- voluntārius, -a, -um** — voluntary
- voluntās, -tātis, f.** — freewill, choice; desire, inclination (28)
- voluptas, voluptātis, f.** — pleasure (11)
- vōs, vestrum/vestri, vōbis, vōs, vōbis** — you (pl.) (10)
- vōx, vōcis, f.** — voice (5)
- vulgus, vulgī, m.** — the multitude, the (common) people, the public (21)
- vulnerō [1]** — to wound (21)
- vulnus, vulneris, n.** — wound (21)
- Vulsci** — the Vulsci (an ancient people)
- vultus, vultūs, m.** — face (18)

### **About Radix Antiqua Publishing**

Radix Antiqua is a non-profit publisher that provides educational materials both in print and online to students at a reasonable price.

All proceeds above its costs are used to support teaching and research in the Humanities, especially the languages, literatures, and histories of the ancient Greeks and Romans.

This project is made possible with funding by the Government of Ontario and through eCampusOntario's support of the Virtual Learning Strategy. To learn more about the Virtual Learning Strategy visit: <https://vls.ecampusontario.ca>.

